PRACTICAL GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN TONGUE.

By THOMAS GOODWIN, A.B.

Price One Shilling.

LONDON: JOHN WEALE, 1854-55.
A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR
OF
THE LATIN TONGUE,
CONTAINING
THE INFLECTIONS AND
ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF TRANSLATION
AND CONSTRUCTION,
Intended for Use in Schools,
AND ADAPTED
TO THE EXIGENCIES OF SELF-INSTRUCTING STUDENTS.

BY
THOMAS GOODWIN, A.B.
HEAD MASTER
OF THE GREENWICH PROPRIETARY SCHOOL.

London:
JOHN WEALE, 59, HIGH HOLBORN.
MDCCCLIV.
LONDON:
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.
Notwithstanding that some people, in obedience to utilitarian principles, in many instances falsely so called, have of late years sought to decry the classical languages as a medium of training for the youthful mind, they still retain their place in the curriculum of school studies; and a knowledge of the Latin language is beginning to be cultivated even by those teachers who conduct national schools, more or less in amount, according as they are anxious to place their schools in a position to entitle them to look for some of the rewards proposed by Government for successful teaching. This is as it should be. Apart from the necessity of a classical education imposed on those designed for professional avocations, the training and discipline of the mind, and the exercise thereof in correct and even deep thinking induced by such studies, enable a youth accustomed thereto to exhibit, according to the testimony of every unprejudiced observer, an amount of intelligence and a vigour of mind, far, very far superior to those of the youth, who, equal to him in respect of every other advantage and endowment, has not had the opportunity of such training.

To facilitate a study so useful is the purpose of the following little work. It has long been the opinion of the writer thereof, and of many other teachers known to him,—an opinion confirmed by the practical experience of the school-room for many years,—
that something may *yet* be done to systematize the efforts of the anxious student, and obviate the many difficulties he finds in his path towards the temple of classical learning. To involve a student, after the acquisition by him of some knowledge of the inflections of words, in the perplexing mazes of the "Propria quæ maribus" and "As in præsenti"—the asses' bridge, in too many educational establishments, even in this somewhat practical day, of Latin literature—is not only inefficient as a system of instruction, but often creates such discouragement in the mind of many a learner, as causes him to give up in disgust the attempt to acquire a knowledge of Latin as wholly unaccomplishable, and thus not unfrequently tends to swell the tide of prejudice against this often indispensable and *always* invigorating study. The Delectus commonly in use as the first introduction to Latin translation and construction, is defective in that want of arrangement and elucidation of principle after principle *progressively*, according to the capacity of the learner to understand and follow, which should exhibit themselves in the pages of a book designed for the use of a *beginner*, and especially for that class of beginners who labour without the assistance of a *vivâ voce* teacher. The distinctive plan of the following Treatise has been conceived with a view to obviate this want; and the conviction in the mind of the writer that the elucidation of a few of the great leading principles of Latin construction, by examples judiciously selected and progressively arranged, is the best method which an elementary work can adopt, has been acted on as an axiom in the execution of the plan. The sentences are from the best Latin authors, and the rules and observations thereon are so systematized, that a learner never meets with a principle of construction in one sentence, which has not been laid down and explained in some foregoing one. It is not meant to be asserted that rules and principles are seen to result from each other in the construction of a language, as propositions in geometry; but it *is* asserted that there exists no reason why, in a work intended to help the
student of a language out of difficulties, there should be presented to him sentences involving, to his great discouragement, principles never before grappled with. The notes on the passages quoted will be found, it is thought, serviceable to the student in comparing the idioms of the Latin with those of his own language, and, by referring back continually to the principles illustrated by particular forms of words, they make provision whereby such principles may be indelibly impressed on his memory, and at the same time render it necessary for him to think for himself, instead of leaning too much on the ill-directed assistance of others. Philological and theoretical disquisitions have been cautiously avoided, as calculated to confuse rather than inform the learner; a copia verborum, a matter of primary importance, is supplied in the sentences furnished; and it is confidently hoped that, when the diligent and anxious student wades through the pages of this and another book to follow on a similar plan, he will have acquired such knowledge of the principles of construction of the Latin tongue as will enable him "to swim without the cork," and master the difficulties which may be presented to him in reading the works of any Latin author. A book, after all, is but a teacher, and the legitimate province of a teacher is but to help out of difficulties. No royal road has as yet been discovered leading to the temple of learning. The writer of this little work has as little faith as any one in the utility and success of works professedly designed to make knowledge easy, and desires earnestly to impress on the minds of those who may address themselves for assistance to the following pages, that no aid can obviate the necessity of deep and anxious study, and no book, however judiciously written, can supply the place of painstaking and laborious assiduity on their part.

It is little more than three months since an arrangement was entered into with the publisher for the publication of this book. The shortness of the time permitted for the writing thereof, and the numerous distractions caused by the conduct, on the part of
the writer, of a large and important educational institution, numbering 270 pupils, together with other professional engagements, will probably cause some imperfections to attach to the work; but it is hoped that those for whose use it is specially designed will see in it, if no more, the one merit of making a step in a right direction, and of, at all events, seeking to aid the great cause of popular education.

T. G.

Greenwich, May, 1854.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introductory Remarks</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On the Noun</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Declension</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Declension</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Declension</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Declension</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth Declension</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises on the Declension of Nouns</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the Adjective</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declension of Adjectives</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises on the Declension of Adjectives</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the Pronoun</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the Verb</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Conjugation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Conjugation</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Conjugation</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjugation of Verbs Passive—First Conjugation</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Conjugation</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Conjugation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises on the Verbs</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Verbs</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defective Verbs</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adverb</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Preposition</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Conjunction</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Interjection</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitions and Explanations of Terms used in the Latin Construction and Translation</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin Construction and Translation</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Set of Rules thereon</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences illustrative thereof</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instructions</td>
<td>ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions on the Analysis of the foregoing Sentences</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Observations on foregoing Rules</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences illustrating the foregoing Observations</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes on foregoing Sentences</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions thereon</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Set of Rules</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences illustrating the whole of the foregoing Rules and Observations</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes thereon</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Set of Rules</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentences illustrative thereof</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes thereon</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dictionary of Words</strong></td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

1. All the words of the Latin language are subdivided, for the sake of convenience, into eight heads, called classes of words, or parts of speech.

2. These are—noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

3. Of these the four first admit of inflexion; the adverb, in some instances, admits of comparison; and the three last named are not modified in any form whatever.

4. The inflexion of a word is the change, generally of termination, it undergoes in order to the expression of a difference of idea.

5. This change, when the noun, pronoun, or adjective is referred to, is usually called declension; when the verb, conjugation.

On the Noun, i.e. the name for any being or thing which may serve as the subject of discourse.

6. To nouns belong gender, number, person, and case.

7. The genders of nouns are three—masculine, feminine, and neuter.

8. Some nouns, the names of animals, which may be masculine or feminine, are called common, as parens, a parent.

Note.—The doubtful gender has no existence in reality, and only means that a particular word is treated by one writer as masculine, by another as feminine.

9. The number of nouns is twofold, singular and plural; the former is used when one object is denoted, the latter when two or more.

10. The persons of nouns are three—first, second, and third. A noun standing for the speaker is said to be of the first, and for the
person spoken to, of the second person; all other nouns, however used, are said to belong to the third person.

11. The case of a noun, pronoun, or adjective is the form it takes in its declension.

12. There are six cases in the Latin language—nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.

Note.—The participle is sometimes regarded as a distinct class of words, but, practically considered as to its functions and declension, belongs to the class adjective.

13. The nouns of the Latin language, as regards their declension, are subdivided into five classes, distinguished by the termination of their genitive singular.

**FIRST DECLENSION.**

The genitive singular ends in *ae*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. mensa</td>
<td>mensae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mensae</td>
<td>mensarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mensae</td>
<td>mensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mensam</td>
<td>mensas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. mensa</td>
<td>mensae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mensa</td>
<td>mensis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note 1.* The nouns of this declension, with few exceptions, are of the feminine gender.

*Note 2.* Filia, nata, anima, socia, serva, and asina make the dative and ablative plural to end in *is* or *abus*; and dea, mula, equa, and liberta terminate in these cases in *abus* only.

**SECOND DECLENSION.**

The genitive singular ends in *i*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. magister</td>
<td>magistri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. magistri</td>
<td>magistrorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. magistro</td>
<td>magistris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. magistrum</td>
<td>magistros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. magister</td>
<td>magistri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. magistro</td>
<td>magistris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note 1.* When the nominative singular of this declension ends in *us*, the vocative will end in *e* : as, nominative, dominus; vocative, domine. Deus, however, makes deus in the vocative.

*Note 2.* Proper names, that is, the names of particular individuals, ending in *ius*, form the vocative by omitting the *us*: as, Virgilius; vocative, Virgili. Filius and genius follow this rule in the formation of their vocative.
ON THE NOUN.

THIRD DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *is*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular (Sing.)</th>
<th>Plural (Plur.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>nubes</td>
<td>nubes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>nubis</td>
<td>nubium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>nubi</td>
<td>nubibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>nubem</td>
<td>nubes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>nubes</td>
<td>nubes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>nube</td>
<td>nubibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note 1.* The genitive plural of this declension in some words makes *um*, in others *ium*, in the termination.

*Note 2.* Nouns of the neuter gender, of *whatever* declension, make the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and these cases in the plural number end in *a*; in their other cases they follow the termination of their proper declension. This note is appended here, because nouns of the neuter gender, with but few exceptions, belong to the second or third declension.

*Note 3.* When the nominative singular of a noun of the *third* declension ends in *e*, if it be of the neuter gender, the ablative will end in *i*; and the nominative plural of such will be formed by adding *a* to the ablative; the genitive plural also will end in *ium*: thus, nominative, *hastile*; ablative, *hastili*; nominative plural, *hastilia*; genitive, *hastilium*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *us*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular (Sing.)</th>
<th>Plural (Plur.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>manuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manui</td>
<td>manibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manum</td>
<td>manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>manus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manu</td>
<td>manibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The genitive singular ends in *ei*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular (Sing.)</th>
<th>Plural (Plur.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>acies</td>
<td>acies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aciei</td>
<td>acierum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aciei</td>
<td>aciebus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aciem</td>
<td>acies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>acies</td>
<td>acies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>acie</td>
<td>aciebus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes on the five Declensions.

1. The nominative and vocative singular of a noun, with few exceptions, which obtain mostly in the second declension (see Notes 1 and 2, Second Declension), are alike, so are also the nominative and vocative plural.

2. The dative and ablative singular of the second declension are alike, so also are the dative and ablative plural of all declensions.

The following table of the terminations of the several cases of nouns may serve in some measure to facilitate the learning thereof:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
<td>1 2 3 4 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. may terminate in any manner</td>
<td>æ i es us es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. æ i is us ei</td>
<td>arum orum um ium uum erum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. æ o i ui ei</td>
<td>is or abus is bus ibus ebus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. am um em um em</td>
<td>as os es us es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. like the nominative</td>
<td>like the nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. a o e or i u e</td>
<td>like the dative.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES ON THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

Note.—The learner will be careful to attend to the declension and gender of the following nouns: the former will be indicated by the genitive singular, and the latter by the initial letter of the gender of each noun. This, with attention to the notes already given, will be sufficient to ensure accuracy in every instance.

Mel, mellis, n. | honey |
Cor, cordis, n. | the heart |
Aqua, aquæ, f. | water |
Poeta, poetæ, m. | a poet |
Ovum, ovi, n. | an egg |
Agnus, agni, m. | a lamb |
Ager, agrī, m. | a field |
Tribus, tribus, f. | a tribe |
Lex, legis, f. | a law |
Corpus, corporis, n. | a body |
Cubile, cubilis, n. | a bed |
Scriba, scribæ, m. | a scribe |
Virga, virgæ, f. | a rod |
Flatus, flatus, m. | a blast |
Versus, versus, m. | a verse |
Acus, acus, f. | a needle |
Os, oris, n. | a mouth |
Fides, fidei, f. | faith |
Species, speciei, f. | a species |

Mus, muris, m. | a mouse |
Sedes, sedis, f. | a seat |
Glacies, glaciei, f. | ice |
Imago, imaginis, f. | an image |
Sal, salis, m. | salt |
Pes, pedis, m. | a foot |
Digitus, digitus, m. | a finger |
Leo, leonis, m. | a lion |
Dolor, doloris, m. | grief |
Mens, mentis, f. | the mind |
Hastile, hastilis, n. | a spear |
Monile, monilis, n. | a necklace |
Marmor, marmoris, n. | marble |
Mons, montis, m. | a mountain |
Rex, regis, m. | a king |
Scurra, scurræ, m. | a scoffer |
Sponsus, sponsi, m. | a bridegroom |
Aper, apri, m. | a boar |
Gigas, gigantis, m. | a giant |
Crinis, crinis, m. hair
Brachium, brachii, n. an arm
Mas, maris, m. a male
Dens, dentis, m. a tooth
Arbor, arboris, f. a tree
Vas, vasis, n. a vessel
Calcar, calcaris, n. a spur
Ars, artis, f. a trade
Caro, carnis, f. flesh
Res, rei, f. a thing
Currus, currus, m. a chariot
Facies, faciei, f. a face
Macies, maciei, f. leanness
Pellis, pellis, f. the skin
Lepus, leporis, m. a hare
Lapis, lapidis, m. a stone
Græcia, Græciae, f. Greece

Cupressus, cupressi, f. a cypress tree
Annus, anni, m. a year
Anna, Anniæ, f. Ann
Anus, anus, f. an old woman
Capra, capræ, f. a she-goat

Cato, Catonis, m. Cato
Crinis, cineris, m. ashes
Athleta, athletæ, m. a wrestler
Bacchus, Bacchi, m. Bacchus
Britannia, Britanniæ, f. Britain
Conditor, conditoris, m. a builder
Apollo, Apollinis, m. Apollo
Callis, callis, m. a path
Eboracum, Eboraci, n. York
Eremus, eremi, f. a desert
Fustis, fustis, m. a club
Literæb, literarum, f. an epistle
Minæ, minarum, f. trifles
Nugæ, nugarum, f. threats
Feriae, feriarum, f. holidays
Exta, extorum, n. entrails
Athenae, Athenarum, f. Athens
Iter, itineris, n. a journey
Cyprus, Cypri, f. the island

Notes.

a. Proper names have no plural, except such as want the singular.

b. When a noun has no singular, its declension may be ascertained by its genitive plural.

c. Consult note a.

Note also, some nouns are not declined; that is, have the same form in whatever case they may be used. Such nouns are mostly, if not always, used as nominatives and accusatives, as fas, nefas, nihil, &c. &c.

Some nouns, moreover, are used in some cases and not in others: as, genitive, spontis; ablative, sponte, of one's own accord. Nominative, vis, force; accusative, vim; ablative, vi (the latter noun has all the cases in the plural number, and is regularly declined thus:

Nom. vires Gen. virium Dat. viribus
Acc. vires Voc. vires Abl. viribus)

Caulis, caulis, m. a stalk
ON THE ADJECTIVE.

The adjective expresses the state or quality of the noun.

The English adjective is not inflected; the Latin adjective is inflected in gender, number, and case.

The Latin adjective is declined according to the declension of nouns.

The adjective in Latin is declined with three, two, and one termination.

An adjective whose nominative case singular has three terminations, is declined like the first and second declension of nouns; the adjective in the feminine form is declined like the first, in the masculine and neuter form like the second declension.

An adjective whose nominative has two terminations or one, is inflected like the third declension of nouns.

When an adjective in any of its cases has three terminations, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter; when it has two terminations, the first is masculine and feminine, and the second neuter; and when it has only one termination, it is of all genders.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>boni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. boni</td>
<td>honorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bono</td>
<td>bonorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. bone</td>
<td>boni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bono</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. tristis</td>
<td>tristes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. tristis</td>
<td>tristium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. tristi</td>
<td>tristibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. tristem</td>
<td>tristes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. tristis</td>
<td>tristes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. tristi</td>
<td>tristibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. prudens</td>
<td>prudentes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. prudentis</td>
<td>prudentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. prudenti</td>
<td>prudentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. prudentem</td>
<td>prudentes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. prudens</td>
<td>prudentes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. prudente or i</td>
<td>prudentibus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1. *Ambo* and *duo* have no singular, and have a declension peculiar to themselves.
ON THE ADJECTIVE

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ambo</th>
<th>ambae</th>
<th>ambo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amborum</td>
<td>ambarum</td>
<td>amborum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ambobus</td>
<td>ambabus</td>
<td>ambobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ambo</td>
<td>ambae</td>
<td>ambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>ambo</td>
<td>ambae</td>
<td>ambo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ambobus</td>
<td>ambabus</td>
<td>ambobus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 2. Some adjectives of three terminations, as unus, totus, solus, ullus, nullus, alter, uter, neuter, unlike bonus, make the genitive in ius and the dative in i: thus, unus, una, unum; genitive, unius; dative, uni. In their other cases they follow the declension of bonus.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison—the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

The positive is the adjective in its simple state, as tristis.

The comparative is formed from the first case of the positive which ends in i, by adding thereto or to make the masculine and feminine, and us for the neuter: thus, dative, tristi; comparative, tristiior, tristiius.

Note 1. The first case of an adjective of one or two terminations which ends in i is the dative, of an adjective of three terminations is the genitive. The superlative is formed by adding ssimus to the same part; as, tristi, tristiissimus.

Note 2. The superlative degree is declined like bonus. The following is a model of the declension of the comparative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>tristior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tristioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tristiori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>tristioriem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>tristior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tristiores or tristiori</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 3. If a vowel precede us in the positive, the degrees are formed usually by prefixing the adverb magis for the comparative, and maxime for the superlative: as, pius, magis pius, maxime pius.

Note 4. If the positive end in er, the superlative is formed by adding thereto rimus: as, teter; superlative, teterrimus.

The following adjectives have a peculiar formation in the superlative:
ON THE ADJECTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agilis</td>
<td>agillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facilis</td>
<td>facillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gracilis</td>
<td>gracillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humilis</td>
<td>humillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docilis</td>
<td>docillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Similis</td>
<td>simillimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonus</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malus</td>
<td>pejor</td>
<td>pessimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnus</td>
<td>major</td>
<td>maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvus</td>
<td>minor</td>
<td>minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multus</td>
<td>plus</td>
<td>plurimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dives</td>
<td>ditior</td>
<td>ditissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nequam</td>
<td>nequior</td>
<td>nequissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterus</td>
<td>exterior</td>
<td>extremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferus</td>
<td>inferior</td>
<td>infimus, imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterus</td>
<td>posterior</td>
<td>postremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superus</td>
<td>superior</td>
<td>supremus, summus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juvenis</td>
<td>junior</td>
<td>intimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senex</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>primus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prior</td>
<td>proximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>proprior</td>
<td>ultimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ulterior</td>
<td>deterium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>deterior</td>
<td>deterrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anterior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Some adjectives having no superlative of their own, procure it by a combination of words: thus, senex, old, makes maximus natu, the greatest by age, i.e. oldest; juvenis, young, minimus natu, least by age, i.e. youngest.

EXERCISES ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Durus, a, um, hard
Tener, a, um, tender
Pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful
Gelidus, a, um, cold
Squalidus, a, um, filthy
Facillimus, a, um, most easy

} like bonus.
ON THE PRONOUN.

A pronoun (pro, for, nomen, a name) is a word used instead of a noun.

Pronouns admit of person, gender, number, and case. They are usually classified into personal, possessive, demonstrative, and relative; and, unlike the noun and the adjective, are not reducible as to their inflexion to any heads or classes.

The personal pronouns are ego, tu, sui, and are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>wanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sui has only some cases, and is the same in both numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>se and sese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>se and sese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possessive pronouns are meus, tuus, suus, cujus, noster, vester; they are declined like bonus, except that meus makes mi in the vocative singular, masculine gender; and that all the others, except noster, want the vocative.

Note.—Nostras, vestras, and cujas are declined like an adjective of one termination: thus, nominative, nostras; genitive, nostratis, &c. &c.
The demonstrative pronouns are *hic, ille, iste, and ipse*; and are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hie</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Iste* is similarly declined, and also *ipse*, except that the latter makes *ipsum* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>eae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ejus</td>
<td>earum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>eorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>iis or eis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In like manner is declined *idem* (for *isdem*), a compound of *is*, except that in the accusative singular, masculine gender, it makes *eundem*.

The relative pronoun *qui* is thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quo</td>
<td>quibus or queis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The compounds of *qui* are similarly declined: *quidam*, a certain person; *quivis* and *quilibet*, any one; and *quicunque*, whoever.

The interrogative *quis*, who, or what, is declined like *qui*, except that it makes *quid* or *quod* in the neuter.
Aliquis, some one, is declined like quis, except that its nominative singular, feminine gender, is aliqua.

ON THE VERB.

A verb expresses the action of, or the receiving of an action by its subject: when the subject acts, the verb is called active; when it receives an act, the verb is called passive. These are the two great subdivisions of the verb family. Some verbs are called by other names indicative of some property connected therewith; these will be considered hereafter.

Verbs are inflected with number, person, mood, and tense.

The number and person of the verb are the same as the number and person of the noun and pronoun.

As far as inflexion is concerned, there are but four moods—the indicative, imperative, potential, and infinitive.

Note.—The subjunctive is the same as the potential, and is attached dependently to another verb to express some condition or limitation thereof.

The tenses are five—present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, and future.

Active verbs are classified into four heads, called conjugations, distinguished one from the other by the vowel and its quantity which precedes re, the termination of the infinitive mood.

The first conjugation has ā long before re, as amāre.
The second has ē long, as docēre.
The third has ē short, as legēre.
The fourth has ī long, as audīre.

The radical parts of an active verb, i.e. the parts from which the others are formed, are the present indicative, the perfect indicative, and the first supine.

The radical parts of the active verb in the several conjugations are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amo</td>
<td>doceo</td>
<td>lego</td>
<td>audio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amavi</td>
<td>docui</td>
<td>legi</td>
<td>audivi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amatum</td>
<td>doctum</td>
<td>lectum</td>
<td>auditum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following will serve as a model of the conjugation of active verbs in the several conjugations.
ON THE VERB.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—*Amo.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

1. **Present Tense.**

Sing. am-o,
  am-as,
  am-at,
Plur. am-amus,
  am-átis,
  am-ant,

*I love, am loving, or do love*
*thou lovest, art loving, or dost love*
*he loveth, is loving, or doth love*
*we love, are loving, or do love*
*ye love, are loving, or do love*
*they love, are loving, or do love.*

2. **Imperfect Tense.**

Sing. am-ábam,
  am-ábas,
  am-ábat,
Plur. am-abámus,
  am-abátis,
  am-abant,

*I did love, or was loving*
*thou didst love, or wast loving*
*he did love, or was loving*
*we did love, or were loving*
*ye did love, or were loving*
*they did love, or were loving.*

3. **Perfect Tense.**

Sing. amáv-i,
  amáv-isti,
  amáv-it,
Plur. amávimus,
  amávístis,
  amáv-érunt, *vel -ére,*

*I loved, or have loved*
*thou lovedst, or hast loved*
*he loved, or hath loved*
*we loved, or have loved*
*ye loved, or have loved*
*they loved, or have loved.*

4. **Pluperfect Tense.**

Sing. amav-eram,
  amav-eras,
  amav-erat,
Plur. amav-éramus,
  amav-érátis,
  amav-erant,

*I had loved*
*thou hadst loved*
*he had loved*
*we had loved*
*ye had loved*
*they had loved.*

5. **Future Tense.**

Sing. am-ábo,
  am-ábis,
  am-ábit,
Plur. am-abímus,
  am-abítis,
  am-ábunt,

*I shall, or will love*
*thou shalt, or wilt love*
*he shall, or will love*
*we shall, or will love*
*ye shall, or will love*
*they shall, or will love.*
ON THE VERB.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first Person.

Sing. am-a, am-áto, love thou, or do thou love
   am-et, am-áto, love he, or let him love
Plur. am-émus, love we, or let us love
   am-áte, am-atóte, love ye, or do ye love
   am-ent, am-ánto, love they, or let them love.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. am-em, I may, or can love
   am-es, thou may'st, or canst love
   am-et, he may, or can love
Plur. am-émus, we may, or can love
   am-étis, ye may, or can love
   am-ent, they may, or can love.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. am-árem, I might, or could love
   am-áres, thou might'st, or could'st love
   am-áret, he might, or could love
Plur. am-áremus, we might, or could love
   am-arétis, ye might, or could love
   am-árent, they might, or could love.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. amav-erim, I should have loved
   amav-eris, thou should' st have loved
   amav-erit, he should have loved
Plur. amav-erimus, we should have loved
   amav-eritis, ye should have loved
   amav-erint, they should have loved.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. amav-íssem, I would have loved
   amav-ísses, thou would' st have loved
   amav-ísset, he would have loved
Plur. amav-íssémus, we would have loved
   amav-íssétis, ye would have loved
   amav-íssent, they would have loved.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. amav-ero, I shall have loved
   amav-eris, thou shalt have loved
   amav-erit, he shall have loved
Plur. amav-erímus, we shall have loved
   amav-eritis, ye shall have loved
   amav-erint, they shall have loved.
ON THE VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.
Present, and Imperfect Tense.
am-āre, to love.
Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
amav-īsse, to have loved.
Future Tense.
amatū-rum esse, to be about to love.

GERUNDS.
amān-dī, of loving
amān-dō, in loving
amān-dum, of love.

SUPINES.
Active.
amāt-um, to love.
Passive.
amāt-u, to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.
Present Tense.
amāns, loving.
Future in rus.
amatū-rus, about to love.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. mon-eo,
mon-es,
mon-et,
Plur. mon-ėmus,
mon-ėtis,
mon-ėtnt,

I advise, am advising, or do advise
thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise
he adviseth, is advising, or doth advise
we advise, are advising, or do advise
ye advise, are advising, or do advise
they advise, are advising, or do advise.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. mon-ėbam,
mon-ėbas,
mon-ėbat,
Plur. mon-ėbāmus,
mon-ėbātis,
mon-ėbānt,

I did advise, or was advising
thou didst advise, or wast advising
he did advise, or was advising
we did advise, or were advising
ye did advise, or were advising
they did advise, or were advising.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. monu-i,
monu-īsti,
monu-it,
Plur. monu-imus,
monu-īstis,
monu-ėrunt, v. -ēre,

I advised, or have advised
thou advisédst, or hast advised
he advised, or hath advised
we advised, or have advised
ye advised, or have advised
they advised, or have advised.
ON THE VERB.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monu-eram,
monu-eras,
monu-erat,
Plur. monu-erámus,
monu-eráitis,
monu-erant,

I had advised
thou hadst advised
he had advised
we had advised
ye had advised
they had advised.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. moné-bo,
moné-bis,
moné-bit,
Plur. mone-bimus,
mone-bitis,
mone-bunt,

I shall, or will advise
thou shalt, or will advise
he shall, or will advise
we shall, or will advise
ye shall, or will advise
they shall, or will advise.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first Person.

Sing. mon-e, mon-éto,
mon-eat, mon-éto,
Plur. mon-eámus,
mon-éte, mon-etóte,
mon-eant, mon-énto,

advise thou, or do thou advise
advise he, or let him advise
advise we, or let us advise
advise ye, or do ye advise
advise they, or let them advise.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. mone-am,
mone-as,
mone-at,
Plur. mone-ámus,
mone-átis,
mone-ant,

I may, or can advise
thou may'st, or canst advise
he may, or can advise
we may, or can advise
ye may, or can advise
they may, or can advise.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. moné-rem,
mone-res,
mone-ret,
Plur. mone-rémus,
mone-rétis,
mone-rent,

I might, or could advise
thou might'st, or could'st advise
he might, or could advise
we might, or could advise
ye might, or could advise
they might, or could advise.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. monu-erim,
monu-eris,
monu-erit,
Plur. monu-erímus,
monu-erítis,
monu-erínt,

I should have advised
thou should' st have advised
he should have advised
we should have advised
ye should have advised
they should have advised.
ON THE VERB.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monu-íssem, I would have advised
monu-isses, thou would'st have advised
monu-isset, he would have advised
Plur. monu-issémus, we would have advised
monu-issétis, ye would have advised
monu-issent, they would have advised.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. monu-ero, I shall have advised
monu-eris, thou shalt have advised
monu-erit, he shall have advised
Plur. monu-erimus, we shall have advised
monu-eritis, ye shall have advised
monu-erint, they shall have advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.
mon-ere, to advise.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
monu-isse, to have advised.

Future Tense.
monitú-rum esse, to be about to advise.

GERUNDS.
monéndi, of advising
monéndo, in advising
monéndum, to advise.

SUPINES.
Active. monit-um, to advise.
Passive. monit-u, to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.
Present Tense. mo-nens, advising.
Future in rus. monitú-rus, about to advise.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Regó.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. reg-o, I rule, am ruling, or do rule
reg-is, thou rules, art ruling, or dost rule
reg-it, he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule
Plur. reg-imus, we rule, are ruling, or do rule
reg-itís, ye rule, are ruling, or do rule
reg-unt, they rule, are ruling, or do rule.
ON THE VERB.

2. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>regé-bam, regé-bas, regé-bat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I did rule, or was ruling thou didst rule,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or was ruling he did rule, or was ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>rege-bámus, rege-bátis, rege-bánt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we did rule, or were ruling ye did rule, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>were ruling they did rule, or were ruling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>rex-i, rex-isti, rex-it,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I ruled, or have ruled thou ruledst, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hast ruled he ruled, or hath ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>rex-imus, rex-istis, rex-érunt, v. -ére,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ye ruled, or have ruled they ruled, or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Pluperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>rex-eram, rex-eras, rex-erat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I had ruled thou hadst ruled he had ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>rex-érámus, rex-érátis, rex-eránt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we had ruled ye had ruled they had ruled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Future Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>reg-am, reg-es, reg-et,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I shall, or will rule thou shalt, or will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule he, or will rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>reg-émus, reg-étis, reg-ent,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we shall, or will rule ye shall, or will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule they, or will rule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first Person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>reg-e, reg-ito, reg-at, reg-itó,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule thou, or do thou rule he, or let him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>reg-ámus, reg-ité, reg-únto,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule ye, or do ye rule they, or let them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>reg-am, reg-as, reg-at,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I may, or can rule thou may'st, or canst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rule he, or can rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>reg-ámus, reg-átis, reg-ánt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we may, or can rule ye may, or can rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they may, or can rule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ON THE VERB.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. reg-erem, I might, or could rule
      reg-eres, thou might'st, or could'st rule
      reg-eret, he might, or could rule
Plur. reg-erémus, we might, or could rule
      reg-erétis, ye might, or could rule
      reg-erent, they might, or could rule.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. rex-erim, I should have ruled
      rex-eris, thou should'st have ruled
      rex-erit, he should have ruled
Plur. rex-erimus, we should have ruled
      rex-eritis, ye should have ruled
      rex-erint, they should have ruled.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. rex-issem, I would have ruled
      rex-isses, thou would'st have ruled
      rex-isset, he would have ruled
Plur. rex-issemus, we would have ruled
      rex-issetis, ye would have ruled
      rex-issent, they would have ruled.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. rex-ero, I shall have ruled
      rex-eris, thou shalt have ruled
      rex-erit, he shall have ruled
Plur. rex-erimus, we shall have ruled
      rex-eritis, ye shall have ruled
      rex-erint, they shall have ruled.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.
reg-ere, to rule.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
rex-isse, to have ruled.

Future Tense.
rectú-rum esse, to be about to rule.

GERUNDS.

regén-di, of ruling
regén-do, in ruling
regén-dum, to rule.
ON THE VERB.

SUPINES.

Active. \( \text{rect-um, to rule.} \)

Passive. \( \text{rect-u, to be ruled.} \)

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense. \( \text{reg-ens, ruling.} \)

Future in \( \text{rus.} \)

rectú-rus, about to rule.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. \( \text{aud-io, aud-is, aud-it,} \)

Plur. \( \text{aud-imus, aud-itis, aud-iunt,} \)

I hear, am hearing, or do hear
thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear
he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear
we hear, are hearing, or do hear
ye hear, are hearing, or do hear
they hear, are hearing, or do hear.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. \( \text{audié-bam, audié-bas, audié-bat,} \)

Plur. \( \text{audié-bámus, audié-bátis, audié-bant,} \)

I did hear, or was hearing
thou didst hear, or wast hearing
he did hear, or was hearing
we did hear, or were hearing
ye did hear, or were hearing
they did hear, or were hearing.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. \( \text{audiv-i, audiv-isti, audiv-it,} \)

Plur. \( \text{audiv-imus, audiv-ístis, audiv-érunt, v. -ére,} \)

I heard, or have heard
thou heardst, or hast heard
he heard, or hath heard
we heard, or have heard
ye heard, or have heard
they heard, or have heard.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. \( \text{audiv-eram, audiv-eras, audiv-erat,} \)

Plur. \( \text{audiv-érámus, audiv-érátis, audiv-erant,} \)

I had heard
thou hadst heard
he had heard
we had heard
ye had heard
they had heard.
ON THE VERB.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. audi-am, I shall, or will hear
    audi-es, thou shalt, or wilt hear
    audi-et, he shall, or will hear
Plur. audi-émus, we shall, or will hear
    audi-étis, ye shall, or will hear
    audi-ent, they shall, or will hear.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first Person.

Sing. aud-i, aud-íto, hear thou, or do thou hear
    aud-iat, aud-íto, hear he, or let him hear
Plur. aud-íámus, hear we, or let us hear
    aud-íte, aud-ítóte, hear ye, or do ye hear
    aud-iant, aud-iúnto, hear they, or let them hear.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. audi-am, I may, or can hear
    audi-as, thou may'st, or canst hear
    audi-at, he may, or can hear
Plur. audi-ámus, we may, or can hear
    audi-átis, ye may, or can hear
    audi-ant, they may, or can hear.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. audí-rem, I might, or could hear
    audí-res, thou might'st, or could'st hear
    audí-ret, he might, or could hear
Plur. audí-rémus, we might, or could hear
    audí-rétis, ye might, or could hear
    audí-rent, they might, or could hear.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. audiv-erim, I should have heard
    audiv-eris, thou should'st have heard
    audiv-erit, he should have heard
Plur. audiv-erimus, we should have heard
    audiv-eritis, ye should have heard
    audiv-erint, they should have heard.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. audiv-íssem, I would have heard
    audiv-ís ses, thou would'st have heard
    audiv-ísset, he would have heard
Plur. audiv-íssemus, we would have heard
    audiv-íssetis, ye would have heard
    audiv-ís sent, they would have heard.
ON THE VERB.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. audiv-ero, I shall have heard
       audiv-eris, thou shalt have heard
       audiv-erit, he shall have heard

Plur. audiv-erimus, we shall have heard
      audiv-eritis, ye shall have heard
      audiv-erint, they shall have heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.

aud-ire, to hear.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

audiv-isse, to have heard.

Future Tense.

auditú-rum esse, to be about to hear.

GERUNDS.

audién-di, of hearing
audién-do, in hearing
audién-dum, to hear.

SUPINES.

Active. Passive.

audit-um, to hear. audit-u, to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense. Future in rus.

audi-ens, hearing. auditú-rus, about to hear.

Formation of the several parts (not radical) of Active Verbs.

From the perfect indicative are formed the pluperfect indicative, amaveram; perfect, pluperfect, and future potential, amaverim, amavissem, amavero; and perfect infinitive, amavisse.

From the present indicative are formed the imperfect and future indicative, amabam, amabo; the imperative mood; present and imperfect potential, amem, amarem; present infinitive, amare; and present participle, amans.

From the first supine in um are formed the second supine, amatu; future participle (in rus), amaturus; and perfect or past participle, amatus.

Note.—The mode of transition from the radical to the derived part in each conjugation may be easily seen by inspection.

The Latin esse serves the same purpose as the English verb to be, by uniting with the past participle to form several tenses of the passive voice; its inflection, therefore, is necessarily learned before that of the passive verb.
ON THE VERB.

INDICATIVE MOOD.
1. Present Tense.

Sing. sum, es, est, I am
Plur. sumus, estis, sunt, thou art
               he is

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. eram, eras, erat, I was
Plur. eramus, eratis, erant, thou wast
               he was
               we were
               ye were
               they were.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. fui, fuisti, fuit, I have been
Plur. fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, vel fuère, thou hast been
               he hath been
               we have been
               ye have been
               they have been.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. fueram, fueras, fuerat, I had been
Plur. fueramus, fueratis, fuerunt, thou hadst been
               he had been
               we had been
               ye had been
               they had been.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. ero, eris, erit, I shall, or will be
Plur. erimus, eritis, erunt, thou shalt, or wilt be
               he shall, or will be
               we shall, or will be
               ye shall, or will be
               they shall, or will be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first Person.

Sing. sis, es, esto, be thou
     sit, esto, be he, or let him be
Plur. simus, sitis, este, estote, be we, or let us be
     sunt, sunt, be ye
               be they, or let them be.
POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. sim,  
sis,  
sit,  
I may, or can be  

Plur. simus,  
sitis,  
sint,  
thou may'st, or canst be  
he may, or can be

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. essem, vel forem,  
esses, vel fores,  
esset, vel foret,  
I might, or could be  

Plur. essémus, vel forémus,  
essétis, vel forétis,  
essent, vel forent,  

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. fuerim,  
fueris,  
fuerit,  
I may, or should have been  

Plur. fuerimus,  
fueritis,  
fuerint,  

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. fuissem,  

fuiisses,  

fuiisset,  
I might, or would have been  

Plur. fuiissémus,  
fuiissetis,  
fuiissent,  

5. Future Tense.

Sing. fuero,  
fueris,  
fuerit,  
I shall have been  

Plur. fuerimus,  
fueritis,  
fuerint,  
we shall have been  

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.

esse,  
to be.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

fuisse,  
to have been.
ON THE VERB.

Future Tense.

fore, vel futúrum esse, to be about to be.

Participle of the future in rus.

Futúrus, about to be.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.— Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. am-or, I am loved
    am-áris, v. am-áre, thou art loved
    am-átur, he is loved

Plur. am-ámur, we are loved
    am-ámini, ye are loved
    am-antur, they are loved.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. am-ábar, I was loved
    am-abáris, v. -abáre, thou wast loved
    am-abátur, he was loved

Plur. am-abámur, we were loved
    am-abámini, ye were loved
    am-abántur, they were loved.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. amat-us sum, v. fui, I have been loved
    amat-us es, v. fuisti, thou hast been loved
    amat-us est, v. fuit, he hath been loved

Plur. amat-i sumus, v. fuimus, we have been loved
    amat-i estis, v. fuístis, ye have been loved
    amat-i sunt, fuerunt, v. -ére, they have been loved.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. amat-us eram, v. fueram, I had been loved
    amat-us eras, v. fueras,
    amat-us erat, v. fuerat,

Plur. amat-i erámus v. fuerámus, we had been loved
    amat-i erátis, v. fuerátis,
    amat-i erant, v. fuerant, ye had been loved
    they had been loved.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. am-ábor, I shall, or will be loved
    am-aberis, v. -abere,
    am-abitur, he shall, or will be loved

Plur. am-abímur, we shall, or will be loved
    am-abímini, ye shall, or will be loved
    am-abúntur, they shall, or will be loved.
ON THE VERB.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. am-áre, am-átor,  
am-étur, am-átor,  
be thou loved  
let him be loved

Plur. am-émur,  
am-émini, am-áminor,  
am-éntur, am-ántor,  
be ye loved  
let them be loved.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. am-er,  
am-érīs, v. am-ére,  
am-érētur,  
I may, or can be loved  
thou may'st, or canst be loved

Plur. am-érēmur,  
am-érēmini, am-érentur,  
we may, or can be loved  
ye may, or can be loved

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. am-árer,  
am-áreris, v. -arere,  
am-árētur,  
I might, or could be loved  
thou might'st, or could'st be loved

Plur. am-áremur,  
am-áremini, am-árentur,  
ye might, or could be loved  
they might, or could be loved

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. amat-us sim, v. fuerim,  
amat-us sis, v. fueris,  
amat-us sit, v. fuerit,  
I should have been loved  
thou should'st have been loved

Plur. amat-i simus, v. fuerimus,  
amat-i sitis, v. fueritis,  
amat-i sint, v. fuerint,  
we should have been loved  
ye should have been loved

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. amat-us essem, v. fuissem,  
amat-us esses, v. fuisse,  
amat-us esset, v. fisset,  
I would have been loved  
thou would'st have been loved

Plur. amat-i essēmus, v. fuissemus,  
amat-i essētis, v. fissentis,  
amat-i essent, v. fissent,  
we would have been loved  
ye would have been loved

5. Future Tense.

Sing. amat-us ero, v. fuero,  
amat-us eris, v. fueris,  
amat-us erit, v. fuerit,  
I shall have been loved  
thou shalt have been loved

Plur. amat-i erimus, v. fuerimus,  
amat-i eritis, v. fueritis,  
amat-i erunt, v. fuerint,  
we shall have been loved  
ye shall have been loved
ON THE VERB.

INFINITIVE MOOD.
Present, and Imperfect Tense.
am-ári, to be loved.
Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
amát-um esse, vel fuisse, to have been loved.
Future Tense.
amát-um iri, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.
The Perfect Tense.
amát-us, loved, or being loved.
The Future in dus.
amán-dus, to be loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.
1. Present Tense.

Sing. mon-eor,
mon-érís, v. -ére,
mon-étur,
Plur. mon-émur,
mon-émini,
mon-éntur,

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. mon-ébar,
mon-ébaris, v. -ebáre,
mon-ébatur,
Plur. mon-ébamur,
mon-ébámini,
mon-ébántur,

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us sum, v. fui,
monit-us es, v. fuisti,
monit-us est, v. fuit,
Plur. monit-i sumus, v. fuimus,
monit-i estis, v. fuistis,
monit-i sunt, fuérunt, v. fuére,

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us eram, v. fueram,
monit-us eras, v. fueras,
monit-us erat, v. fuerat,
Plur. monit-i erámus, v. fuerámus,
monit-i erátis, v. fuerátis,
monit-i erant, v. fuerant,
ON THE VERB.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. mon-ébor, mon-éberis, v. -ebere, mon-ebitur,
Plur. mon-ebimur, mon-ebimini, mon-ebúngur

I shall, or will be advised
thou shalt, or will be advised
he shall, or will be advised
we shall, or will be advised
ye shall, or will be advised
they shall, or will be advised.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. mon-ere, mon-etor, mon-eatur, mon-etor,
Plur. mon-eamur, mon-emini, mon-eminor, mon-eántur, mon-éntor,

be thou advised
let him be advised
let us be advised
be ye advised
let them be advised.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. mon-ear, mon-áre, v. mon-eáre, mon-eátur,
Plur. mon-émur, mon-émini, mon-eántur,

I may, or can be advised
thou may'st, or canst be advised
he may, or can be advised
we may, or can be advised
ye may, or can be advised
they may, or can be advised.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. mon-érer, mon-éreis, v. -éreré, mon-érétur,
Plur. mon-érémur, mon-éremini, mon-érémentur,

I might, or could be advised
thou might'st, or could'st be advised
he might, or could be advised
we might, or could be advised
ye might, or could be advised
they might, or could be advised.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us sim, v. fuerim, monit-us sis, v. fueris, monit-us sit, v. fuerit,
Plur. monit-i simus, v. fuerimus, monit-i sitis, v. fueritis, monit-i sint, v. fuerint,

I should have been advised
thou should'st have been advised
he should have been advised
we should have been advised
ye should have been advised
they should have been advised.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. monit-us essem, v. fuissem, monit-us esse, v. fuisset, monit-us esset, v. fuisset,
Plur. monit-i essémus, v. fuissémus, monit-i essétis, v. fuissetis, monit-i essent, v. fuissent,

I would have been advised
thou would'st have been advised
he would have been advised
we would have been advised
ye would have been advised
they would have been advised.
ON THE VERB.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. monit-us ero, v. fuero,
      monit-us eris, v. fueris,
      monit-us erit, v. fuerit,
Plur. monit-i erimus, v. fuerimus,
      monit-i eritis, v. fueritis,
      monit-i erunt, v. fuérint,

I shall have been advised
   thou shalt have been advised
   he shall have been advised
we shall have been advised
ye shall have been advised
they shall have been advised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.
mon-éri, to be advised.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
monit-um esse, vel fuisse, to have been advised.

Future Tense.
monit-um iri, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.
monit-us, advised, or being advised.

The Future in dus.
monén-dus, to be advised.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Regor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. reg-or,
      reg-eris, v. reg-ere,
      reg-itur,
Plur. reg-imur,
      reg-imini,
      reg-üntur,

I am ruled
   thou art ruled
   he is ruled
we are ruled
ye are ruled
they are ruled.

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. reg-ebra,
      reg-ebráris, v. -ebrae,
      reg-ebra tur,
Plur. reg-ebramur,
      reg-ebramini,
      reg-ebra tur,

I was ruled
   thou wast ruled
   he was ruled
we were ruled
ye were ruled
they were ruled.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. rect-us sum, v. fui,
      rect-us es, v. fuisti,
      rect-us est, v. fuit,
Plur. rect-i sumus, v. fuimus,
      rect-i estis, v. fuístis,
      rect-i sunt, fuérunt, v. fuëre,

I have been ruled
   thou hast been ruled
   he hath been ruled
we have been ruled
ye have been ruled
they have been ruled.
ON THE VERB.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. rect-us eram, v. fueram, I had been ruled
  rect-us eras, v. fueras, thou hadst been ruled
  rect-us erat, v. fuerat, he had been ruled
Plur. rect-i erámus, v. fuerámus, we had been ruled
  rect-i erátis, v. fuerátis, ye had been ruled
  rect-i erant, v. fuerant, they had been ruled.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. reg-ar, I shall, or will be ruled
  reg-éris, v. reg-éré, thou shalt, or wilt be ruled
  reg-étur,
Plur. reg-émur, he shall, or will be ruled
  reg-émini, we shall, or will be ruled
  reg-éntur, ye shall, or will be ruled

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. reg-ere, reg-itor, be thou ruled
  reg-átur, reg-itor, let him be ruled
Plur. reg-ámur, let us be ruled
  reg-ímini, reg-íminor, be ye ruled
  reg-ántur, reg-úntor, let them be ruled.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. reg-ar, I may, or can be ruled
  reg-árís, v. reg-áre, thou may'st, or canst be ruled
  reg-átur,
Plur. reg-ámur, he may, or can be ruled
  reg-ámini, ye may, or can be ruled
  reg-ántur,

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. reg-erer, I might, or could be ruled
  reg-éréris, v. reg-érère, thou might'st, or could'st be ruled
  reg-érétur,
Plur. reg-érémur, he might, or could be ruled
  reg-érémini, ye might, or could be ruled
  reg-éréntur, they might, or could be ruled.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. rect-us sim, v. fuerim, I should have been ruled
  rect-us sis, v. fueris, thou should'st have been ruled
  rect-us sit, v. fuerit, he should have been ruled
Plur. rect-i sinus, v. fuerimus, we should have been ruled
  rect-i sitis, v. fueritis, ye should have been ruled
  rect-i sint, v. fuerint, they should have been ruled.
4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. rect-us essem, *v.* fuissem,
rect-us esses, *v.* fuisses,
rect-us esset, *v.* fuisset,
Plur. rect-i essémus, *v.* fuissémus,
rect-i essétis, *v.* fuissétis,
rect-i essent, *v.* fuissent,

*I would have been ruled*
*thou wouldst have been ruled*
*he would have been ruled*
*we would have been ruled*
*ye would have been ruled*
*they would have been ruled.*

5. Future Tense.

Sing. rect-us ero, *v.* fuero,
rect-us eris, *v.* fueris,
rect-us erit, *v.* fuerit,
Plur. rect-i erimus, *v.* fuerimus,
rect-i eritis, *v.* fueritis,
rect-i erunt, *v.* fuerint,

*I shall have been ruled*
*thou shalt have been ruled*
*he shall have been ruled*
*we shall have been ruled*
*ye shall have been ruled*
*they shall have been ruled.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Presenl, and Imperfect Tense.

reg-i, to be ruled.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.

rect-um esse, vel fuisse, to have been ruled.

Future Tense.

rect-um iri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.

rect-us, ruled, or being ruled.

The Future in dus.

regén-dus, to be ruled.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. aud-ior,
aud-iris, *v.* aud-ire,
aud-itur,
Plur. aud-imur,
aud-imini,
aud-iúntur,

*I am heard*
*thou art heard*
*he is heard*
*we are heard*
*ye are heard*
*they are heard.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. aud-jébar,
aud-ibáris, *v.* aud-ibáre,
aud-iébatur,
Plur. aud-ibámur,
aud-ibámini,
aud-iébantur,

*I was heard*
*thou wast heard*
*he was heard*
*we were heard*
*ye were heard*
*they were heard.*
ON THE VERB.

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. audit-us sum, v. fui,  
    audit-us es, v. fuisti,  
    audit-us est, v. fuit,  

Plur. audit-i sumus, v. fuimus,  
    audit-i estis, v. fuistis,  
    audit-i sunt, fuérunt, v. fuére,  

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. audit-us eram, v. fueram,  
    audit-us eras, v. fueras,  
    audit-us erat, v. fuerat,  

Plur. audit-i erámus, v. fuerámus,  
    audit-i erátis, v. fuerátis,  
    audit-i erant, v. fuerant,  

5. Future Tense.

Sing. aud-iar,  
    aud-iéris, v. aud-iére,  
    aud-iétur,  

Plur. aud-iémur,  
    aud-iémini,  
    aud-iéntur,  

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. aud-ire, aud-ítor,  
    aud-iátur, aud-ítor,  

Plur. aud-iámur,  
    aud-ímini, aud-íminor,  
    aud-iántur, aud-iúntor,  

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. aud-iar,  
    aud-iáris, v. aud-iáre,  
    aud-iátur,  

Plur. aud-iámur,  
    aud-iámini,  
    aud-iántur,  

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. aud-írer,  
    aud-íréris, v. aud-írére,  
    aud-írétur,  

Plur. aud-íremur,  
    aud-írémini,  
    aud-írentur,
3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. audit-us sim, v. fuerim, I should have been heard
    audit-us sis, v. fueris, thou should'st have been heard
    audit-us sit, v. fuerit, he should have been heard
Plur. audit-i simus, v. fuerimus, we should have been heard
    audit-i sitis, v. fueritis, ye should have been heard
    audit-i sint, v. fuerint, they should have been heard.

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. audit-us essem, v. fuissem, I would have been heard
    audit-us esses, v. fuisse, thou would'st have been heard
    audit-us esset, v. fuisset, he would have been heard
Plur. audit-i essémus,v. fuissemus, we would have been heard
    audit-i essétis, v. fuissetis, ye would have been heard
    audit-i essent, v. fuissent, they would have been heard.

5. Future Tense.

Sing. audit-us ero, v. fuero, I shall have been heard
    audit-us eris, v. fueris, thou shalt have been heard
    audit-us erit, v. fuerit, he shall have been heard
Plur. audit-i erimus, v. fuerimus, we shall have been heard
    audit-i eritis, v. fueritis, ye shall have been heard
    audit-i erunt, v. fuerint, they shall have been heard.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, and Imperfect Tense.
    aud-íri, to be heard.

Perfect, and Pluperfect Tense.
    audit-um esse, vel fuisse, to have been heard.

Future Tense.
    audit-um iri, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

The Perfect Tense.
    audit-us, heard, or being heard.

The Future in dus.
    audiéndus, to be heard.

EXERCISES ON THE VERBS.

1 damno, I condemn dannavi damnare damnatum
docceo, I teach docui docere doctum
duco, I lead duxi ducere ductum
3 incesso, I provoke incessivi incessere incessitum
intelligo, I understand intellexi intelligere intellectum
4 haurio, I draw up hausi haurire haustum
2 jubeo, I command jussi jubere jussum
do, I give dedi dare datum
Instructions.

1. If it were required to give the Latin for *they will condemn*, the first thing to be determined is the mood and tense, the voice, number, and person of the English verb. In the present instance, it is the future tense, indicative mood, third person plural, and the active voice. Next, *damno* is the first conjugation, and must be treated like *amo*, the future of which is *amabo*, and is found by changing the *o* of the present into *abo*: thus, the future of *damno* is *damnabo*, the third plural of which, according to the model of the inflection of the persons of this tense in the first conjugation, is *damnabunt*, which, as the nominative of the *pronoun* is not expressed in Latin, except for emphasis' sake, is the literal representative of the English expression, *they will condemn*.

2. *They would be given.* — Here is the passive voice, potential mood, imperfect tense, third plural. Compare the model, *amo*, which, like *do*, is the first conjugation, and observe the formation of this part:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amo</td>
<td>amem</td>
<td>amarem</td>
<td>amarere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>dem</td>
<td>darem</td>
<td>daren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inflect *dare* in the persons, and the third plural will be found *darentur*.

3. *They would have been provoked.* — The passive voice, potential mood, pluperfect tense, third plural. Observe the formation of the part in question:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auditum</td>
<td>auditus</td>
<td>auditus essem, <em>vel fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incessitum</td>
<td>incessitus</td>
<td>incessitus essem, <em>vel fuissem</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inflect the latter according to the model, and the third plural will be *incessiti essent, vel fuisserent*, the part required.

By comparing the models of the four conjugations of the active or passive regular verbs, and observing the formation of the several parts, any part required may be found.

The following are to be translated into Latin:—

1 I might have been condemned.  7 I have been taught.
2 They would command.      8 To have been condemned.
3 Ye might be understood.  9 Let us lead.
4 He might have given.   10 They would have been given.
5 They would be leading. 11 He might understand.
6 Let them understand.  12 Let us be taught.
ON THE VERB.

13 I was giving.
14 He had been condemned.
15 To be given.
16 Lead ye.
17 I would draw up.
18 Let them be commanded.
19 I would be teaching.
20 To have been drawn up.
21 To have been given.
22 To have condemned.
23 I might teach.
24 They would draw up.
25 Let them provoke.
26 We might command.
27 We might have commanded.
28 Let them be commanded.
29 We understand.
30 They teach.
31 Let them provoke.
32 I have commanded.
33 To be commanded.
34 To have provoked.
35 They would give.
36 I was understood.
37 They were given.
38 He was taught.
39 Let him be leading.
40 They would lead.
41 I had been led.
42 To have been condemned.
43 I am commanded.
44 Let us be drawn up.
45 I am leading.
46 To lead (1st supine).
47 To lead (infinitive).
48 Let us be understood.
49 I was given.
50 They would have drawn up.
51 To have been drawn up.
52 Draw ye up.
53 I would have been led.
54 I did give (imperfect).
55 Be ye condemned.
56 To understand (1st supine).
57 I have been teaching.
58 Ye have been taught.
59 To be teaching.
60 Let them be commanded.
61 I had been leading.
62 To be leading (infinitive).
63 To be condemned.
64 Condemn ye.
65 Do ye condemn.
66 Let them draw up.
67 I was drawn up.
68 I would be led.
69 Ye would lead.
70 Ye would be led.
71 To have been leading.
72 Let him understand.
73 I have been provoking.
74 Ye have been given.

Key to the foregoing.

Note.—The following answers are given, not to obviate the necessity of close and anxious study on the part of the pupil,—nothing can supply the place of such study,—but to assist in some cases, and encourage in all; the learner having the power to ascertain whether his efforts have been successful.

Answers.

1 Damnatus essem, vel fuissem.
2 Juberent.
3 Intelligeremini.
4 Dedisset.
5 Ducerent.
6 Intelligant, intelligunto.
7 Doctus sum, vel fui.
8 Damnatum esse, vel fuisse.
9 Ducamus.
IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregularities prevail in the conjugation of certain Latin verbs, as in the verbs of other languages. The following is an analysis of the conjugation of the principal irregular verbs of the Latin tongue:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Verb</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Posse</td>
<td>to be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velle</td>
<td>to be willing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolle</td>
<td>to be unwilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malle</td>
<td>to be more willing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Malle is compounded of magis, more, and velle, to be willing; and edere in some parts is conjugated like esse.
## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### 1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possum</td>
<td>potes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volo</td>
<td>vis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolo</td>
<td>nonvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malo</td>
<td>mavis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edo</td>
<td>edis, v. es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fero</td>
<td>fers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fio</td>
<td>fis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feror</td>
<td>fere, v. ferre, fertur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pot-eram</td>
<td>eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volé-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolé-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malé-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edé-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feré-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fié-bam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feré-bar</td>
<td>báris, v. báre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potu-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volu-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolu-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malu-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tul-i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact-us</td>
<td>sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-us</td>
<td>fui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Pluperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potu-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volu-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolu-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malu-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tul-eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact-us</td>
<td>eram, eras,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-us</td>
<td>fueram, -eras, -erat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ON THE VERB.

5. Future Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pot-ero</td>
<td>eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vol-am</td>
<td>erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nol-am</td>
<td>erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mal-am</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-am</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer-am</td>
<td>éris, v. ére</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer-ar</td>
<td>étur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*Possum, volo, and malo have no imperative mood.*

Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noli, nolito.</td>
<td>nolite, nolitóte.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ede, edito, vel es, esto; edámus; edite, editóte vel este, edát, editóte vel esto</td>
<td>estóte; ed-ant, -unto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer, ferto; ferat, ferto ferámus; ferte, fertóte; fer-ant, -unto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fi, fito; fiat, fito fiámus; fite, fitóte; fiant, fiunto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer-re, tor; ferátur, ferto ferámur; ferimin-i, -or; -antur, -untor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**POTENTIAL MOOD.**

1. Present Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poss-im</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vel-im</td>
<td>ímus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nol-im</td>
<td>ítis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mal-im</td>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-am</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer-am</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fi-am</td>
<td>ámus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fer-ar</td>
<td>átis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Imperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poss-em</td>
<td>es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vell-em</td>
<td>et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noll-em</td>
<td>émus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mall-em</td>
<td>étis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eder-em</td>
<td>ant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ess-em</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferr-em</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fier-em</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferr-er</td>
<td>éris, v. ére</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ON THE VERB.

### 3. Perfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potu-erim</td>
<td>eris, erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volu-erim</td>
<td>erimus, eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolu-erim</td>
<td>erint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malu-erim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-erim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tul-erim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact-us sim,</td>
<td>i simus, sit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-us fue-rim</td>
<td>fuerimus fueritis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4. Pluperfect Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potu-issem</td>
<td>isses, isset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volu-issem</td>
<td>issémus, issétis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolu-issem</td>
<td>issent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malu-issem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-issem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tul-issem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact-us essem,</td>
<td>i essémus, essétis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-us fu-issem</td>
<td>fuissémus fuissétis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. Future Tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Potu-ero</td>
<td>eris, erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volu-ero</td>
<td>erimus, eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nolu-ero</td>
<td>erint.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malu-ero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ed-ero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tul-ero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact-us ero,</td>
<td>erimus, eritis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat-us fue-ro</td>
<td>fuerimus fueritis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

**Present, and Imperfect Tense.**

- posse
- velle
- nolle
- malle

- edere, *vel esse*
- ferre
- fieri
- ferri

**Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.**

- potuisses
- voluisses
- noluisses
- maluisses

- edisse
- tulisse
- factum esse, *vel fuisse*
- latum esse, *vel fuisse*
ON THE VERB.

Future Tense.

estúrum esse factum iri
latúrum esse latum iri

Possum, volo, nolo, malo, have no future tense of the infinitive mood.

Ire, to go, is irregular in some of its parts; in others it is formed regularly.

The radical parts of this verb are—present indicative, eo; perfect indicative, ivi; supine, itum.

Of this verb, those parts which are formed from the perfect indicative and first supine are regular. The irregular formations are as follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE MOOD.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present. eo</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. ibam</td>
<td>ibat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ibamus ibatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future. ibo</td>
<td>ibit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ibimus ibitis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE MOOD.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i, ito eat, ito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eamus ite, itote eant, eunto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POTENTIAL MOOD.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present. eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. irem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GERUNDS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eundi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eundo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLE, iens (gen. euntis).

Note.—The compounds of eo are similarly conjugated; also queo, to be able, and nequeo, to be unable, except that the two latter have no imperative mood and no gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called defective, that have only some particular tenses and persons: as,

Aio, I say.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE MOOD.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present. aio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf. aiébam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect. aisti</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE MOOD.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ON THE VERB.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

**Present.**  aias aiat | aiamus  aiant
PARTICIPLE, aiens.

Ausim, *I dare.*

INDICATIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

**Present.** ausim ausis ausit | ausint

Ave, *hail.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

ave, aveto — | avete, avetote —

INFINITIVE MOOD.

avere.

Salve! *God save you!*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Future.** salvabis —

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

salve, salveto —

INFINITIVE MOOD.

salvere.

Cedo, *give me.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

cedo —

Faxo, or faxim (*for faciam*), *I will, or may do it.*

INDICATIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

**Future.** (faxo, vel) faxis faxit | faximus faxitis faxint

Quæso, *I pray.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Present.** quæso quæsis quæsit | quæsumus

INFINITIVE MOOD.

quæsere.

PARTICIPLE, quæsens.
Inquio, or inquam, I say.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquio, <em>vel</em> inquam }</td>
<td>inquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquit</td>
<td>inquimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect.</strong></td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquisti</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquies</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

| —— | inque | inquiat, inquito | —— | —— | —— |

**PARTICIPLE, inquiens.**

Memini, I remember.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

| —— | memento | —— | mementóte |

Cœpi, I begin.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

| **Perfect.** | coœpi | coœpisti | —— | —— | —— |

Odi, I hate.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

| **Perfect.** | odi | odisti | odit | —— | —— | oderunt |

Memini, remember. This verb has the tenses only that are formed from the perfect tense of the indicative mood: as from it are formed _memin-eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse._

In like manner _cœpi_ and _odi_ also form these tenses.

**THE ADVERB.**

The adverb modifies the force of the word with which it is connected in Latin, as in English: as, _magnopere cupio discere_, I am very anxious to learn; wherein _magnopere_ modifies the signification of the word _cupio._

*Note.*—Some adverbs in Latin admit of comparison: thus, _bene_, well; comparative, _melius_, better; _optime_, best. The comparative of the adverb, in such cases, is the comparative neuter of the adjective agreeing with a noun understood, which is governed by some preposition also understood.
THE PREPOSITION.

The preposition connects words: as, *exivit ex urbe*, he departed from the city; wherein *ex* is the preposition, and connects *ille*, the subject of *exivit*, or *exivit* itself, with *urbe*.

Prepositions require after them a noun, or its representative, the pronoun.

Such noun or pronoun, except the preposition be in composition, that is, form a part of another word, will always be in either the accusative or ablative case.

Some prepositions govern the accusative, and others the ablative case, and some govern both cases; but a preposition governing different cases varies its signification according to the case it governs.

The following are the principal prepositions which govern the ablative case:—*A, ab, abs, absque, coram, clam, cum, de, e, ex, prae, pro, sine, tenus.*

The following are the principal prepositions which govern the accusative:—*Ad, adversus, adversum, ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, penes, per, pone, post, præter, prope, propert, secundum, supra, trans, ultra, usque, versus.*

In, sub, subter, and super are the principal prepositions which, varying their significations, govern the accusative and ablative.

THE CONJUNCTION.

The conjunction is a particle which unites words or clauses together; when clauses, the preceding one is modified by the latter in some particular of time, place, manner, &c. &c.: as, *eram miser, cum amarem*, I was wretched when I loved; wherein the *cum* connects the latter with the former clause, the state expressed therein being asserted only of the time in which the act took place expressed in the latter clause.

THE INTERJECTION.

Any word or particle which is used to express a sudden feeling of passion or emotion is called by the name interjection: thus, *ah! oh!*

In the Latin, as in the English language, nouns, adjectives, and verbs are frequently used interjectionally: as, *nefas! miserable!* &c. &c.
Definitions and Explanations of Terms used in the following Treatise.

1. Translation is the rendering of the words of one language into words in another, so as thereby to express the same idea.

2. The construction of a language (generally) is the putting together (literally piling or building up) its words agreeably to the observed usage thereof. The construction of a particular word is the formula it requires to be used in connexion with it: as, dare librum magistro, to give a book to the master; from which it appears that the verb dare is constructed with an accusative of the thing given, and a dative of the person or thing which receives it.

3. A transitive verb (transeo, to pass over) is a verb that expresses an act which passes on to or affects an object: thus, condere lunam, to hide the moon; wherein lunam is the object or the thing affected by the act of hiding. The ear always detects the transitive verb, which leaves a vacuum after it, the sense not being concluded until such vacuum is filled up.

4. The subject of a sentence is the word which is the subject of conversation, that is, the word of which the verb makes the affirmation. This subject is in the nominative case: thus the subject of a verb and its nominative case are identical.

5. The agent is the word which expresses the performer of an act. In an active verb the subject or nominative case and the agent are identical: thus, "I sleep;" where I is the subject or nominative of the verb sleep, and also the agent or performer of the act of sleeping. In the passive verb, on the contrary, the agent and subject are not identical: as, "The house is burned by fire;" where house is the subject, and fire the agent.

6. The complement of a word (compleo, to fill up) is the word or formula of words connected with or appended to it for the purpose of explanation: thus, "The Queen of England, England's Queen;" wherein of England in the former, and England's in the latter expression, is the complement of Queen.

7. A deponent verb (deponere, to lay down) is a verb which, though passive in inflexion, lays down, that is, gives up, the passive signification, and is active in sense.

8. A simple sentence has in it but one subject and one verb. Attention is directed in this definition to the force of and, because a sentence having one subject and two verbs, or two subjects and one verb, is not simple, being resolvable into as many simple sentences as there are either subjects or verbs.
A complex sentence is one which may be resolved into two or more simple sentences.

9. A word is said to be syncopated when a letter or syllable is elided from the middle thereof. The mark (‘) is generally set over the part where the want exists: as, quierant, for quieverant.

10. The context of a word or passage is the sentence or sentences which stand connected with it. The context is frequently the best commentary as to the meaning of a doubtful word or passage.

11. The influence which one word exercises over another is properly called government, inasmuch as the governed word assumes a definite form, in obedience, as it were, to the word by which such influence is exerted: thus, in the expression Britanniae Regina, the former word explaining the latter is said to be governed by it in the genitive case, according to the principle laid down in Rule 5.

12. Words are said to be disjunctively connected when they are united in the same link by a copula, which shows that the thing asserted is said of one to the exclusion of the other; and copulatively connected when the assertion is made equally of all.

13. The antecedent is the word for which the relative stands, and is sometimes called the correlative.

14. A periphrasis is a form of expression whereby an idea is represented by many words which could be expressed directly by few: thus, “From the rising to the setting of the sun,” i.e. from east to west.

15. Attraction is a species of construction which exhibits itself in various forms, the principal of which is that wherein the relative is put in (attracted to) the case of the antecedent, irrespectively of the position of the relative in its own clause.

16. Hendiadis is a figure of speech whereby what is really but one is represented as two things: thus, gemmis auroque, with gems and gold, i.e. with golden gems.

17. Synecdoche is a figure of speech whereby a part is put for the whole.

LATIN CONSTRUCTION AND TRANSLATION.

Rules.

1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

2. The adjective agrees with the noun which it qualifies in gender, number, and case.
3. Transitive verbs govern an accusative case.
4. Some prepositions require the noun after them to be in the accusative, and some in the ablative case.
5. One noun governs another which explains or modifies it in the genitive case.
6. The word which expresses the instrument with which, the cause for which, or the manner in which an act is performed, is put in the ablative case.

Note.—The first rule means that the subject and the verb must be in the same number and person; the second that the adjective and the noun must be in the same gender, number, and case; and the third rule states a general principle to which there are many exceptions, which will be considered hereafter. The number of the rule will be appended in the following sentences to the word to which, as illustrating it, attention is directed.

**Sentences.**

1. Scipio 1 fudit 5 Annibalis 3 copias.
2. Lethi vis 1 rapuit, 1 rapietque 3 gentes.
3. Cita mors 1 venit, aut victoria 2 læta.
4. Orpheus 6 carmine 3 sylvas et 3 saxa 1 duxit.
5. Concordia 2 parvæ res 1 crescunt, 6 discordia 2 maximæ 1 dilabuntur.
6. Dente 2 tenaci anchora 1 fundabat 3 naves.
7. Neptunus 6 ventis 1 implevit 3 vela 2 secundis.
8. Extemplo 5 Libyæ 2 magnas 1 it fama per 4 urbes.
9. Homines 2 proniores 1 sunt ad 4 voluptatem, quam ad 4 vir- tuten.
10. Pallida mors 2 æquo 1 pulsat 6 pede 5 pauperum 3 tabernas, 5 regumque 3 turres.
11. Nox 1 erat, et 2 placidum 1 carpebant 2 fessa 3 soporem corpora per 4 terras, silvæque et 2 sæva 1 quierant æquora.
12. Navita de 4 ventis, de 4 tauris 1 narrat arator.
13. Cantabit 2 vacuus coram 4 latrone viator.
14. Tres Eurus ab 4 alto in 4 brevia et 4 syrtes 1 urget.

**INSTRUCTIONS.**

**Sentences.**

1. The first thing to be done in translating a sentence is to look out for all the words thereof in the index or dictionary.
The parts of speech to which each belongs, and the case, number, &c. &c. of a noun or pronoun, with the conjugation, number, person, mood, and tense of the verb, can be thus acquired. This done, the subject of the sentence and the verb are next to be found out, and then the other words must follow in translation as the construction or sense, or both together, will dictate. In the case of the present sentence, there are three nouns, one only of which, Scipio, is in the nominative case. This, therefore, may at once be concluded to be the subject of the only verb in the sentence, fudit, which will be found from its inflexion to be in the indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular. The translation in English of these two words is, therefore, “Scipio has routed (or routed).” This is evidently a transitive verb, as indicated by the ear, because a man cannot rout without routing something. The next thing is to find out that something. The only noun in the sentence which can express the something routed is copias, because it is the only one in the accusative case, and by Rule 3 transitive verbs govern the accusative. The sentence thus far is in English, “Scipio routed (the) forces;” and the remaining word, Annibalis, being in the genitive case, belongs to copias in construction, and so in translation, by Rule 5; and the whole sentence, therefore, when rendered into English, is, “Scipio routed the forces of Annibal.” In addition to this, the particulars of the declension of each word inflected are to be ascertained; and as far as the sentence in question is concerned, all is known concerning it which can be exacted from the learner.

2. The subject, according to the principles enunciated under Sentence 1, is vis. The complement of vis is lethi, because lethi can be joined as the genitive complement to no other noun in the sentence so as to make sense. The verb is rapuit, which is connected with rapiet by the conjunction que. The object of these transitive verbs evidently is gentes, and the sentence translated is, “The force of death has carried off, and will carry off nations.”

3. Herein are merely involved, in addition to the preceding principles, the concord or agreement between the noun and the adjective, which is laid down in Rule 2. Mors is the noun, citus the adjective. On looking to the index, citus is perceived to be an adjective of three terminations, like bonus. Mors is the nominative case, singular number, feminine gender; and citus declined will be found in these three parts to be cita: hence cita, not any other part of the adjective, is properly used to qualify mors. The same principle regulates lexita, which qualifies victoria, which latter is the subject of the verb venit as well as
mors. The sentence translated therefore is, "Quick death comes, or joyful victory."

Note.—An adjective in Latin, as in English, sometimes qualifies a noun in the place of the adverb of that adjective qualifying the verb: thus the above sentence is equivalent to "Death comes quickly."

4. Orpheus is evidently the subject (Rule 1), because the verb is singular; and though saxa may be elsewhere the nominative, yet, because it is plural, it cannot be the nominative to duxit in the singular. Sylvæ and saxa are in the same yoke or link, as connected by the copulative que; and carmine, as the ablative, expresses the instrument (Rule 6). Thus the sentence translated will be, "Orpheus led (after him) the woods and rocks by his verse," i. e. by the power of his song.

5. In the first clause there is a subject, which cannot be concordia, the verb being plural, and concordia singular (Rule 1): hence it must be res. This is qualified by parvae, and concordia, in the ablative, expresses the instrument, as does discordia in the next clause, of which res understood is the subject, qualified by maximæ (see Comparison of Irregular Adjectives). Dilabuntur is a deponent verb, and to be translated as if it were active. The sentence, therefore, stands thus when translated: "Small things increase by concord, the greatest dwindle away by discord."

6. The instructions already given are quite sufficient to enable the learner to translate this sentence: "The anchor moored the ships with its fast-holding fluke."

Note.—Tenax means tenacious, i. e. fast-holding, and dens, which literally means a tooth, i. e. any thing which bites or holds in its gripe, is translated fluke, the name of that part of the anchor which catches the bottom and holds fast. Care must be taken to render one language by such words in another as will most neatly and correctly express the sense.

7. The subject is at once seen to be Neptunus. The verb implevit is transitive in signification, and must govern vela, not ventis, as the object; the latter is the instrument, and is qualified by secundis. The sentence, therefore, translated means, "Neptune filled the sails with favourable blasts."

Note.—The adjective, in Latin, does not immediately precede or succeed the qualified word, as it does in the English language.

8. Fama, tried by the preceding principles, is the only subject; it, the verb. Extemplo, an adverb, qualifies this verb. Per, a preposition, cannot govern Libyæ in the genitive (Rule 4); therefore it must govern urbes, which is qualified by magnas, and which has Libyæ as its genitive complement (Rule 5). This
sentence, therefore, is thus translated: "A report goes (is spread) immediately through the great cities of Africa."

9. Proniores, from the positive pronus, declined like bonus, is the comparative degree (see Comparison of Adjectives), and qualifies homines. This sentence, rendered into English, is, "Men are more prone to pleasure than (they are) to virtue."

10. Mors is evidently the subject, and pallida can agree with no other word in the sentence. Pulsat is a transitive verb, and has for its object (see Definition 3) tabernas and turres, connected by que, the genitive complement of tabernas being pauperum, and of turres, regum. The translation is, "Pale death knocks at the huts of the poor and the towers of kings with an equal (impartial) foot." Pede expresses the manner or instrument (Rule 6).

11. This is a complex sentence, and has in it three simple ones. Nox erat, night was, i.e. it was night; et connecting this with the succeeding sentence, the verb of which is plural, and the only subject in which is corpora, qualified by fessa. The verb is transitive, and requires an object, which is found in soporem, qualified by placidum. The next sentence has two subjects, silvae and æquora, the latter qualified by sæva; and the verb quierant is syncopated for quieverant. The English is, "It was night, and wearied bodies were enjoying peaceful sleep throughout the earth (or world), and the woods and boisterous seas had become quiet (had been hushed in silence)."

12. Nothing is required to be said here but that the verb narrat is understood in the first clause to the subject navita, and that the preposition de signifies of, in the sense of concerning or about.

13. Nothing is required to be said as to the construction of this sentence, the meaning of which is, that a traveller having nothing to lose is not afraid to attract the attention of robbers.

14. The subject of urget evidently is Eurus; and the line itself shows, apart from its context, that tres (three) must have some noun, as naves (ships), agreeing with it understood. In in this sentence signifies into, and governs the accusative, which is brevia and syrtes, connected by et. The English is, "The east wind drives three (ships) into shoals and quicksands."

Questions on the Analysis of the foregoing Sentences.

1. What tense and mood is fudit? What number, and why? What conjugation, and how known? Give its radical parts. Why is copias in the accusative, and Annibalis in the genitive?

2. Decline vis. What is its complement? What is the object of rapuit, and what of rapiet?
3. Show that *citæ mors* would violate some grammatical principle.
4. Why is *carmine* in the ablative? Decline it.
5. Show that *parvae* and *maximæ* are not the genitives singular. Give the radical parts of *crescunt*, its mood and tense. What kind of verb is *dilabuntur*? Explain this name as applied to a verb.
6. Decline *tenax*.
7. What case is *ventis*, and why? What conjugation is *implevit*? Give its principal parts.
8. What word is *Libyæ* the complement of? Compare *magnas*.
9. Compare *proniæres*. What does it qualify?
10. Show that *pallida* does not qualify *pede*. What is *pau-perum* governed by? *Regum*? Why is *pede* in the ablative?
11. Would *placidam* be good Latin? What is the subject of *carpebant*? Decline it. Give the principal parts of *carpebant*. Decline *aequora*.
12. Why is *latrone* in the ablative case? What are the principal parts of *cantabit*?
13. Decline *brevia*. What does *tres* agree with? What does *in* signify here? What nouns are governed by *in*? What case is *alto*? Decline it. Give the principal parts of *urget*. What conjugation is it? How known? What does *et* connect?

Observations on the foregoing Rules.

Rule 1.

1. Plurality of idea in the subject constitutes the necessity of the plural construction of the verb. The subject is plural when it consists of one or more plural nouns, or two or more singular nouns copulatively connected; it is also plural when it consists of a noun in the singular conveying plurality of idea, (generally called a noun of multitude,) or of a single noun associated with a formula of words, of some of which, though not in the nominative case, the verb affirms.
2. The infinitive mood, or part, or the whole of a sentence, supplies the place of a nominative.
3. Two singular nouns disjunctively connected have a verb singular. When two nouns, one singular, the other plural, are disjunctively connected, it is manifest that, though the verb affirms of both, it can agree in number only with one; this one is usually that next to the verb. It may also be the other without any violation of philosophical grammar.
4. When two or more nominatives of different persons are copulatively connected, the verb in the plural will agree in person
with the first rather than the second, and with the second rather than with the third.

Rule 2.

5. If there be several nouns of different genders qualified by one adjective, it cannot agree in gender with them all. It is made in such case to agree with the masculine rather than the feminine, and with the feminine rather than the neuter.

Rule 3.

6. To this the construction of many verbs exhibits an exception: misereor and miseresco govern the genitive, potior and utor govern the genitive or ablative. Verbs expressing profit or hurt to any one (except ledo, juvo, adjuvo, offendo, and delecto), verbs of commanding and obeying, or resistance, verbs of trusting, those which express threats and anger, and many verbs compounded with ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, prae, super, satis, bene, and male, govern the dative case.

Rule 4.

7. The preposition tenus, if the noun after it be plural, is usually followed by a genitive case.

Rule 5.

8. The genitive complement must express something different from that which governs it.
9. This genitive is frequently changed into the dative.
10. Nouns which are names for the same thing are put in the same case: this is usually called apposition by grammarians.
11. Should the latter of two nouns (one being the complement of the other) have an adjective of praise or dispraise, or, in fact, any qualification joined with it, such noun is more usually expressed in the ablative than the genitive.
12. Opus and usus, when they signify need, are followed by the ablative.

Note.—In the following sentences the foregoing observations will be illustrated, and the figure over each word will refer to the number of the observation thereby illustrated.

1. Eo modo inter se duo imperatores, summi \(^{10}\) viri, \(^{1}\) certabant.

2. Vestibulum ante ipsum, primisque in faucibus Orci, Luctus et ultrices \(^{1}\) posuere cubilia curae; Pallentesque habitant morbi, tristisque senectus, Et metus, et malesuada fames, et turpis egestas, Terribiles visu \(^{10}\) formae, letumque, laborque.
4. Verum ubi, pro labore, desidia, pro continentia et æquitate, lubido atque superbia invasere, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur.
5. Pars ingentem formidine turpi scandunt rursus equum, et nota conduntur in alvo.
6. Pars calidos latices et ahena undantia flammis expedient.
7. At Lentulus cum ceteris constituerant uti Lucius Bestia, tribunus plebis, quereretur de actionibus Ciceronis, bellique gravissimi invidiam optimo consuli imponeret.
8. Ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur.
10. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.
11. Prodere patriam est peccatum.
12. Suave est ex magno tollere acervo.
13. Dicere de se ipso est senile.
15. Aut Brutus, aut Triumviri victores erunt.
16. Aut Triumviri, aut Brutus victor erit.
17. Et ego et amicus eramus consules.
18. Tu et Valerius eritis consules.
19. Multi filii et filiae impositi sunt in rogum.
21. Si bene quid de te merui, miserere domus labentis, et istam, oro, exue mentem.
22. Si vero capere Italiam, sceptrisque potiri contigerit victori, et prædæ ducere sortem.
23. Utere domo mea pro tua.
24. Parvula formica, simul inversum contristat Aquarius annum, non usquam proreptit, et illis utitur ante quæsitis sapiens.
25. Quàm metui, ne Libyæ tibi regna nocerent!
26. Quid tantùm te insano juvat indulgere dolori, on dulcis conjux!
27. Cave, te ne frigora lædant.

29. Quid juvat immensum "te "argenti pondus et "auri furtim defossa timidum deponere terra?

30. Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia "cuique.


32. Me ne salis placidi vultum fluctusque quietos
Ignorare jubes? Me ne huic confidere "monstro?

33. Octavius non solebat temere irasci "amicis.

34. Nunquamne levari obsidione sines? "muris iterum immi
net hostis nascentis Trojæ?

35. Non ego nunc dulci amplexu dvellerer usquam, nate, tuo; neque finitimus Mezentius unquam, huic "capiti insultans, tot ferro saeva dedisset funera.

36. Hic perpetuis soliti patres considere "mensis.

37. Jamque ascendebant collem "urbi imminentem.

38. Rex, genus egregium Fauni, nec fluctibus actos atra subegit hyems vestris succedere "terris, nec sidus regione viæ, littusve fœellit.

39. Priusquam dimicarent, fœ dus ictum inter Romanos et Albanos est his legibus, ut, cujuque populi cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri "populo cum bona pace imperitaret.

40. Male "sustainenti arma gladium superne jugulo defigit, ja centemque spoliat.

41. Movet feroci "juveni animum comploratio sororis, in victoria sua tantoque gudio publico.

42. Atrox visum id facinus Patribus plebique: sed recens meritum "facto obstabat.

43. Sunt mihi bis septem præstanti "corpore nymphae.

44. Deiopeiam connubio jungam stabili, propriamque dicabo, omnes ut te cum meritis pro talibus annos exigat et pulchra faciat te "prole parentem.

45. Homines insïma "fortuna historia delectantur.

46. Fronte sub adversa "scopulis pendentibus antrum. Intus aquæ dulces, vivoque sedilia "saxo, Nympharum domus.
47. **Auctoritate tua nobis opus est.**
48. **Ubi testimonia rerum adsunt, quid opus est** verbis?
49. **Tantummodo incepto opus est; cetera res expediet.**
50. **Curius, ubi intellexit quantum periculum consuli impendeat, propere per Fulviam dolum paratum enunciat.**

**Notes on the foregoing Sentences.**

1. **Eo modo**—in this manner. Nouns are frequently governed by prepositions understood; *modo* is governed by *in*, or it may be regarded as the ablative expressing the manner. See Rule 6.

2. **Duo—summi.** For the declension of *duo*, see the Declension of Adjectives; and for the comparison of *summi*, the Comparison of Irregular Adjectives.

3. **Luctus, curae.** The combined subject of *posuere*.

4. **Cubilia.** The object of this verb: nominative singular, neuter, *cubile*, genitive *cubilis*. See Note under Third Declension.

5. **Desidia.** This is the subject of *invasit*, understood out of *invasere*, the subject expressed of which are *lubido* and *superbia*. The English translation is, "But when instead of labour, idleness (entered), instead of temperance and a sense of justice, passion and tyrannical insolence entered, their (the Romans’) good fortune together with their morals became changed." *Immutatur*, literally, *is changed*. This verb is in the present tense, which is very frequently used by historical writers for the past or imperfect.

6. **Formidine turpi.** This is the cause (Rule 6), and governed by *scandunt*; in English, "A part scale the horse through (by reason of) base fear."

7. **Flammis.** The ablative of the means or instrument (Rule 6). It is governed by *undantia*, which agrees with *aeha*; in English, "The caldrons boiling over by the flames." It should be mentioned that participles govern the same cases as the verbs of which they are parts; and that adjectives generally in Latin, as in English, are to be taken separately as it were from their nouns, when the adjective has connected with it an expression of limitation: thus we say, "The heated earth;" but "The earth heated by the rays of the sun;" where "The rays of the sun" express a limitation of *heated*; and show the means by which, to the exclusion of all others, the heating took place.

8. **At Lentulus—but Lentulus with (and) others had determined that Lucius Bestia, a tribune of the people, should prefer a charge concerning the acts of Cicero, and lay the odium of this most troublesome outbreak on the best consul (the best of consuls). The pluperfect expresses an act prior to some other act**
expressed or implied. This other act cannot be gathered here, as the context is wanted.

9. *Postremam*—the rear rank of the Romans, the Roman last line of men. *Acies*—a body of men in battle array. *Agmen*—a body in line of march; and *exercitus*—a body in a state of training or military exercise.

10. *Dulce et decorum.* The subject of this sentence is *pro patri mori*, which serves as a noun qualified by these adjectives. The adjective so placed is always in the neuter gender.

13. “To speak of one’s self is senile,” *i.e.* the property of old age.

14. *Momento,* see Note 1. *Victoria* is the subject of *venit.*

21. “If I have deserved well from you (at your hands) pity your falling house, and, I beseech you, give up this intention.” The object of a verb is frequently understood: thus *oro* requires *te.*

22. *Et praeced ducere sortem*—and to cast lots for the plunder.

23. “Use my house for (as) your own (house).”

24. “The little ant, as soon as Aquarius saddens the inverted year, never creeps abroad any where; but wise (the ant wisely) uses those things before acquired.” “As soon as Aquarius makes sad,” *i.e.* as soon as winter arrives.

*Sapiens.* In Latin, as in English, an adjective agreeing with the noun is sometimes equivalent to an adverb qualifying the verb: thus in the text, “A wise ant uses,” = “An ant wisely uses.”

*Quæsitis.* Agreeing as a participial adjective with *rebus* understood. The participle or adjective is frequently placed alone, the noun being expressed or implied in the context.

29. “Why does it delight you timid (filled with anxiety) to deposit in the ground, secretly excavated, an immense weight of silver and gold?”

31. *Referebat sese*—was bringing herself back, *i.e.* was returning.

*Et lactum*—and beheld, far off from the sky, joyful *Æneas* and the Trojan fleet even as far as from the Sicilian Pachynus, she sees them now to build (building) houses, now to trust (put confidence in) the land.

32. *Me ne.* *Ne*—whether, an interrogative particle; this particle need not be translated. “Whether do you order me?” *i.e.* Do you order me? “Do you bid me be unacquainted with?” *i.e.* Do you think I am unacquainted with?

*Confidere monstro*—do you bid me put confidence in this monster? *i.e.* the sea; the meaning is, “I will not put confidence in it.”
34. *Nunquam*—will you never permit us to be relieved from this blockade? Will an enemy once again hang over the walls of rising Troy? *i. e.* Troy once again being built.

35. "I would not now be ever separated from your sweet embrace, my son. Nor would the neighbouring Mezentius, insulting this person of mine, have ever exhibited so many cruel deeds of slaughter with the sword."

36. *Soliti.* It will have been observed that certain portions of the passive verb are made up of the past participle of the verb itself, and some portion of the verb *esse.* This portion of *esse* is determined by the part of the verb required; the participle in such case is declined like an adjective of three terminations and agrees with the subject, like an adjective, in gender, number, and case. It is to be remarked, moreover, that the portion of *esse* required is frequently understood: thus, in the present instance, *sunt* is understood, to agree with *patres* in number and person.

38. "O king, illustrious descendant of Faunus, neither has the dark storm forced us, driven by the waves, to enter your territories, nor has a star or shore deceived us in (drawn us out of) the track of our way."

39. "Before they engaged, a league was struck up between the Romans and Albans on the following conditions—that of whatever state the subjects should conquer in that conflict, that should rule over the other state in good (firm or honourable) peace." This is the literal translation; the Latin text is according to a form of expression which cannot be explained at this stage.

40. "He buries from above (by striking down) his sword in the throat of him (*ei*) badly (scarcely) supporting (able to support) his arms." In Latin every word is not expressed, as it is in English; pronouns are frequently understood, as here; so are the Latin equivalents for *man* and *thing,* of which more will be said hereafter.

42. *Visum.* *Est* is understood. See latter part of Note 36.

43. "Seven nymphs are to me," *i. e.* I have seven nymphs. The verb *esse* is frequently used for *habere,* the construction, of which more hereafter, being different.

44. *Propriamque dicabo*—and will assign (her to you as) your own.

46. *Antrum*—there is a cave. The subject of *est* understood. *Aquae,* subject of *sunt*; as also *sedilia.* *Vivo saxo*—seats of living (natural) stone.

47. "There is need to us," &c. &c., *i. e.* we have need. See Note 43.
49. "There is need only of a beginning, every thing else will expedite itself," *i. e.* push itself on after once set going.

50. *Per* Fulviam—through the agency of Fulvia. *Per* with an accusative after it denotes agency in such accusative, and is thus equivalent to the ablative of the instrument.

**Questions on the foregoing Sentences.**

1. Decline *duo* and *se*. Account for the case of *modo*.
2. What is the subject of this sentence? Decline *cubilia*. 
   *Morbi* is the subject of *habitant*; express the verbs with each of the remaining subjects. 
   Decline *metus* and *senectus*.
3. What case is *formidine* in, and why? What part of the verb is *conduntur*?
4. What word in this line shows the gender of *latices*? Why?
5. When is the pluperfect used? What part of the adjective is *gravissimi*? How found?
6. Why is *invasere* plural? What part of the verb is it? Give its principal parts.
7. What may be regarded as the subject of *constituerant*? When is the pluperfect used? What part of the adjective is *gravissimi*? How found?
8. The subject of *impositi sunt*? What part of the verb? Why is *impositi* in the masculine gender? State generally the principle involved here.
9. What is the exact use of *ne*? Decline *fluctus* and *monstro*, and account for the case of both.
10. Whether does *temere* qualify *solebat* or *irascri*?
11. Decline *funera*. What part of the verb is *divellerer*?
12. What part of the verb is *soliti*? What part of the verb is omitted? What case is *mensis*? Why?
   Decline *sidus*, and give the radical parts of *fefellit*.
14. What part of the verb is *vicissent*? Give its radical parts. Why?
40. What does sustinenti agree with? What principle is involved here? What does jacentem agree with?
42. What is understood with visum? What case is facto in, and why?
43. Why is corpore in the ablative? Also prole?
46. What is aquae the subject of? Decline sedilia.

Rules.

7. The infinitive mood takes before it an accusative instead of a nominative as a subject. This accusative is translated into English with the word that prefixed.
8. Any transitive may be changed into a passive verb. The following changes necessarily take place in the construction of the sentence:
   1. The object of the transitive verb becomes the subject of the passive verb.
   2. The subject of the transitive verb becomes the ablative of the agent. This ablative is introduced with or without a or ab, and is sometimes expressed in the dative.
   3. The number and person of the passive verb are determined by those of its own subject.
9. Esse for habere requires a dative case. The following changes are necessary in the construction of the sentence:
   1. The object of habere becomes the subject of esse.
   2. The subject of habere becomes the dative, the number remaining the same.
   3. The number and person of esse are determined by those of its subject.
   
   Note.—The mood and tense of the two verbs are always the same.
10. The comparative degree is followed by an ablative case, which is translated into English by the prefix than.
   
   Note.—This ablative is equivalent to quam, than, and such case of the noun or pronoun following as the construction of the sentence would naturally require.
11. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.
   
   Note.—Sometimes they agree in case, but this is not essential, and depends altogether on the construction of the sentence; that is, on the position which they both occupy therein.
12. The relative is the nominative to the verb when no nominative comes between them.
   
   Note.—The case of the relative is in all instances the case
which the noun would be in for which the relative is a substitute. Also, when the relative is connected objectively with the verb, it precedes the verb in Latin, as in English.

13. The verbs *sum, fio, existo*, verbs passive of naming, and most passive and intransitive verbs, are followed by that case of the noun or pronoun which precedes it.

14. The ablative case is frequently used absolutely, that is, free from the government of any other word: in this case it frequently agrees with the past participle, the word *being* being understood between them. It most frequently expresses a state of being, and the cause of an expressed act.

15. The feminine noun *res*, a thing, is frequently omitted, and, in such case, the adjective is made neuter; also *homo*, a man, is omitted, and the adjective made masculine.

In the following sentences the *whole of the foregoing rules and observations* will be illustrated.

1. Fœedere icto trigemini, arma capiunt.

2. Priusquam inde digrederentur, roganti Metto ex fœedere icto quid imperaret, imperat Tullus, uti juventutem in armis habeat; usurum se eorum opera, si bellum cum Vejentibus foret.

3. Ita exercitus inde domos ab ducti. Princeps Horatius ibat, trigemina spolia praæ se gerens. Cui soror virgo, quæ desponsa uni ex Curiatiis fuerat, obvia ante portam Capenam fuit; cognitoque super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi, quod ipsa confecerat, solvit crines, et flebiliter nomine sponsum mortuum appellat.


5. Improbus est, qui scit beneficium accipere, nescit reddere.

6. Caesar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato.

7. In mundo Deus est, qui regit, qui gubernat, qui cursum astrorum, qui mutationes temporum, rerum vicissitudines, ordines-que conservat.
8. Regius, accitu cari genitori, ad urbem
Sidoniam puer ire parat, mea maxima cura,
Dona ferens pelago, et flammis restantia Trojæ.

9. Forte in duobus tum exercitibus erant trigemini fratres, nec
ætate, nec viribus dispares, Horatios Curiatiosque fuisse satis constat.

10. Quibus rebus confectis, omnia propere per nuncios consuli
declarantur.

In the following sentences the contrast will be exhibited be-
tween the different constructions refered to in Rules 8, 9, 10.

| TRANSITIVE. | PASSIVE. |
| 11. Oves lanam præbent. | Lana ab ovibus præbetur. |
| 13. Ego cepi laetiam ex epistola patris. | Lætitia a me capta est ex epistola patris. |
| 15. Fortia taurorum corpora frangit opus. | Fortia corpora taurorum ab opere franguntur. |
| 16. Miles timet sagittam hostis. | Sagitta hostis a milite timeatur. |
| 17. Sapientem neque paupertas, neque mors, neque vincula terrent. | Sapiens neque paupertate, neque morte, neque vinculis terretur. |
| 18. Literas expecto quas promisisti. | Literæ a me expectantur, quas promisisti. |

| HABERE. | ESSE. |
| 21. Æternumque locus Palinuri nomen habebit. | Æternumque loco Palinuri nomen erit. |
Rule 10.

Comparative and Ablative.

23. Nihil est dulcius his litteris, quibus coelum, terras, maria cognoscimus.

24. Scientia nulla res est praestantior.

25. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.

Comparative and Quam.

Nihil est dulcius quam hae litterae (sunt) quibus coelum, terras, maria cognoscimus.

Nulla res est praestantior quam scientia (est).

Vilius argentum est quam aurum (est), aurum (est vilius) quam virtutes (sunt).


27. Pecuniam in loco negligere, maximum interdum est lucrum.

28. Cur me querelis examinas tuis? Nec Dies amicum est, nec mihi, te prius obire, Mæcenas, mearum grande decus cumenque rerum.


30. Nempe inter varias nutritur sylva columnas, laudaturque domus longos quæ prospicit agros.

31. Nil admirari prope res est una, solaque, quæ possit facere et servare beatum.

32. Quando pauperiem, missis ambagibus, horres, accipe, quæ ratione quæas ditescere. Turdus, sive alius privum dabitur tibi, devolet illuc, res ubi magna nitet, domino sene.

33. Ille gravem duro terram qui vertit aratro, miles, nautæque per omnes audaces mare qui currunt, hac mente laborem sese ferre, sene ut in otia tuta recedant, aiunt, cum sibi sint congesta cibaria.

34. Est modus in rebus, sunt certi denique fines, Quos ultra citraque nequit consistere sectum.

35. Nec diu pax Albana mansit, invidia vulgi, quod tribus militibus fortuna publica commissa fuerit, vanum ingenium dictatoris corruptit, et quoniam recta consilia haud bene evenerant, pravis reconciliare popularium animos cæpit.

36. Igitur, ut prius in bello pacem, sic in pace bellum quærens, quia suæ civitati animorum plus quam virium cernebat esse, ad bellum concitat alios populos.
37. Postquam, regno diviso, legati Africa discessere, et Jugurtha, contra timorem animi, praemia sceleris adeptum sese videt; certum ratus, quod ex amicis apud Numantiam acceperat, omnia Romæ venalia esse, simul et illorum pollicitationibus accensus, quos paullo ante muneribus expleverat, in regnum Adherbalis animum intendit.

38. Ceterum fama tanti facinoris per omnem Africam brevi divulgatur. Adherbalem omnesque qui sub imperio Micipsæ fuerant, metus invadit; in duas partes discendunt; plures Adherbalem sequuntur, sed illum alterum bello meliores. Igitur Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat; urbes, partim vi, alias voluntate, imperio suo adjungit; omni Numidiae imperare parat.

39. Prodigus et stultus donat quæ spernit et odit.

40. Fingit equum tenera docilem cervice magister ire viam qua monstrat eques.

41. Quo semel est imbuta recens, servabit odorem Testa diu.

42. Invidus, iracundus, iners, vinosus, amator; Nemo adeo ferox est, ut non mitescere possit, Si modo culturae patientem commodet aurem.

43. Vides, quæ maxima credis Esse mala, exiguum censum, turpemque repulsam, Quanto devites animi et capitis labore. Impiger extremos curris mercator ad Indos, Per mare pauperiem fugiens, per saxa, per ignes: Ne cures ea quæ stulte miraris et optas, Discere et audire et meliori credere non vis?

44. Cervus equum pugna melior communibus herbis Pellebat, donec minor in certamine longo Imploravit opes hominis, frænumque recepit; Sed postquam victor violens discessit ab hoste, Non equitem dorso, non frænum depulit ore. Sic qui pauperiem veritus, potiore metallis Libertate caret, dominum vehet improbus, atque Serviet æternum, quia parvo nesciet uti. Cui non conveniet sua res, ut calceus olim, Si pede major erit, subvertet; si minor, teret.

46. Postquam Cato adsedit, consulares omnes, itemque senatus magna pars, sententiam ejus laudant, virtutem animi ad cœlum ferunt. Alii alios increpantes timidos vocant; Cato magnus atque clarus habetur.

47. Sciebam sæpenumero parva manu cum magnis legionibus hostium contendisse; cognoveram parvis copiis bella gesta cum opulentis regibus; ad hoc, sæpe fortunæ violentiam toleravisse; facundia Graecos, gloria belli Gallos ante Romanos fuisse. Ac mihi multa agitanti constabat, paucorum civium egregiam virtutem cuncta patravisse, eoque factum, uti divitias paupertas, multitudinem paucitas superaret.

48. Caesar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato. Ille mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. His genus, aetas, eloquentia prope aequalia fuerint.


51. Sic locutus, cum literis, quas Micipsæ redderet, dimisit. Earum sententia hæc erat: Jugurthæ tui bello Numantino longe maxima virtus fuit; nobis ob merita carus est, uti idem senatui sit, et populo Romano, summa ope nitemur. Tibi quidem pro nostra amicitia gratulor. Igitur rex, ubi quæ fama acceperat, ex literis imperatoris ita esse cognovit, cum virtute viri, tum gratia permutus, flexit animum suum, et Jugurtham beneficiis vincere aggressus est, statimque adoptavit, et testamento pariter cum filiis heredem instiuit. Sed ipse paucos post annos, morbo atque aetate confectus, cum sibi finem vitae adesse intelligeret, coram amicis et cognatis, item Adherbale et Hiempsale filiis, dicitur hujuscemodi verba cum Jugurtha habuisse.

Notes on the foregoing.

1. Fædere icto—the league being struck (see Rule 14). The propriety of the usage of the word strike in such case, arises
from the fact of leagues having been ratified by *striking*, i.e. sacrificing, a victim.

2. *Ex fœedere icto*—according to the struck league, i.e. the league which had been struck.

*Tullus imperat*—Tullus commands Mettus inquiring what he (Tullus) would command him, according, &c.

3. *Ab ducti (sunt)*—were withdrawn to their homes.

*Cui soror*. The order is, *Cui soror, virgo, fuit obvia*, “whom his sister, a virgin, met:” literally, was meeting. *Obvia* governs a dative.

*Quæ desponsa fuerat*—who had been betrothed to one of the Curiatii. Mark the force of the pluperfect. The betrothal had occurred before the battle.

*Cognitoque*—and having recognized on her brother’s shoulders the military cloak of her spouse. The cloak being recognized. See Rule 14.

*Quod ipsa confecerat*—which she herself had wrought. See Note under Rule 12, and Rule 12 itself.

4. *Qui plurimus*—which, very large, very much, i.e. to a great extent hangs over (overlooks) the city. *Plurimus* agrees with *qui*, i.e. *collis*.

*Aspectat*. The subject is *qui*, i.e. *collis*. “And which looks at the opposite citadels from its top,” i.e. commands a view of.

*Miratur*—Æneas wonders at the vast size of the city, once but Numidian huts. *Magalia* is in apposition with *molem*, which is put for the city itself. See Observation 10, Rule 5.

*Streptitumque*—the noise of the workmen and the paved streets (*strata viarum*). With *strata, loca* is understood. “The laid down places of the streets.”

*Pars ducere muros*—some (press on, instant) to raise the walls.

*Aptare locum tecto*—to fit out or prepare a site for a building, and to enclose it with a ditch.

5. *Nescit*—knows not how (*ne*, not, and *scire*, to know). The object of *reddere* is *beneficium*, understood; and the antecedent to *qui* is *ille*, understood, the subject of *est* and of the sentence.

6. *Beneficiis ac munificentia*. See Rule 6. *Cato* is the subject of *habebatur*, understood; which latter has *magnus*, understood, as its complement.

7. *Deus est*—a God is in the world: i.e. according to the usage of the English, “There is a God.”


*Pelo, flammis*, both governed by *ex*, understood.

9. *Constat*. The subject is the remainder of the sentence,
“That they were the Horatii and the Curiatii is quite well agreed on.”

10. Quibus rebus confectis—which things being accomplished. See Rule 14.

Omnia—all things: equivalent to omnes res. See Rule 15.

13. Patris. The complements undergo no change; the parts changed being the subject, the object, and the verb.

17. Terrent. The verb is plural, to agree with the last-named subject. The verb terret is understood with each of the preceding singular subjects: the learner will observe that this is also the usage of the English language.

18. Quas. The student will pay especial attention to Rules 11, 12, with the Notes under them.

24. Præstantior (præ, before, and stare, to stand).

27. In loco—in the proper place, i.e. at the proper time. Pecuniam negligere, &c., &c., is the subject of est. See Observation 2.

28. Dis. The mark (') over a word indicates that a letter or syllable is omitted. The word in question is syncopated for divis, the dative and ablative plural of deus; the old nominative was divus. See Definition 9.

Te obire. Te is the subject. See Rule 7.

Nec—nec. Two necs so coming together are translated, the first, neither; the second, nor. When so situated they are called correlative; the first being called the antecedent, and the second the consequent.

Decus columna. In apposition with te in the accusative, or Mæcenas in the vocative.


Agente nimbos—than the east wind (Euro) driving before it the clouds. “The cloud-driving east wind.”

31. Una, solaque—the one and only thing.

Nil admirari. The subject of est. “To be struck with admiration of nothing.” To set one’s heart on nothing.

Beatum. Hominem is understood. See Rule 15.

32. Missis ambagibus—circumlocution being given up. Rule 14.

Accipe—hear. Auribus is understood. “Take in with the ears.” So accipe (oculis)—“see.”

Qua ratione—by what means.

Turdus. Understand si. “If or should a thrush or any other private thing (something for your own private use) be given to you, let it fly thither (be speedily sent) where a great property shines, the owner being an old man.” (This is a satire on the
habit of paying court to the rich; of course the language is ironical.)

33. From *ille* to *miles* inclusive is a periphrasis for *agricola*, a husbandman. "He who turns up the sluggish soil with the hard ploughshare, the soldier, and the sailors who bold (boldly) voyage through every sea, say (aiunt) that they endure toil with this intent, that they (when) old may retire into safe ease (a quiet life of ease) when provisions (a subsistence) have been put up by them."

*Sibi.* The dative after the passive verb *congesta sint.* See Rule 8, and Observation 2 under it.

35. *Invidia vulgi*—the dissatisfaction of the common people (the cause of which was) that the public fortune was given up to the keeping of three champions warped (turned from the path of honour) the fickle disposition of the dictator. And, since straightforward plans had not turned out well, he began to attach (to himself) the affections of his subjects by dishonest (plans, *consiliis*).

36. *Ut prius*—as before seeking peace during a period of war (*in bello*), so (now) seeking war during a time of peace, he rouses to arms other states, because he perceived that his own state had more courage (of courage) than strength. The student will observe that the principal verb does not necessarily come first in the sentence, and that it cannot be in a subsidiary or dependent clause, such as that beginning with *quia* in this place, the words wherein are employed to give a reason for the act expressed by *concitat*.

*Plus animorum* is the accusative subject of *esse.* "He perceived that more of courage was to his own state." For the syntax of *civitati* see Rule 9, with the Observations under it.

37. *Regno diviso*—the kingdom being divided, *i.e.* after the division of the kingdom.

*Et Jugurtha*—and (when, *postquam*) Jugurtha perceived that he had obtained (*sese adeptum esse*) the reward of his perfidy, thinking that that was true (*id esse certum*) which he had heard, *viz.* that all things were saleable (to be had for money) at Rome, and also (*simul*) fired by the promises of those whom he had a short time before satiated with money, &c. &c.

*Africa,* the ablative governed by *ex,* understood.

*Sese,* the accusative subject of *adeptum esse.* See Rule 7.

*Certum ratus.* Supply *id* (for *eam rem*) *esse.*

*Quod acceperat.* See Rules 11, 12, and Notes; also Note on *accipe* in sentence 32 of the foregoing.

*Romæ*—at Rome. The syntax of this and such words will be hereafter laid down in a definite rule.
38. Facinoris. Facinus is a deed, good or bad; scelus, a deed always bad.  

Brevi, an adverb, or the ablative of brevis, agreeing with tempore, understood.  

Illum alterum—the other. Illum supplies the place of the definite article wanted in Latin.  

Bello meliores—those who were superior in war (follow) the other.  

Quam maximas copias—as great a number of forces as possible. This is a common phraseology in Caesar, Sallust, and Livy.  

Partim vi—some by violent measures, others of their own free will.  


Quae spernit—the things which he despises. The antecedent of quae is ea—those things; and the ea (which is understood) is the object of donat. This is a common usage in the Latin language, and nearly allied to the conversion of the relative and the antecedent in English into the compound what.  

40. Tenera cervice—the docile horse of (possessed of) tender (flexible) neck. See Observation 11, under Rule 5.  

Ire viam—to go the way. This accusative may be regarded as governed by the intransitive ire, in like manner as intransitive verbs in English are followed by an objective case analogous to the verb in signification: as, "He walked a distance of forty miles." It is evident, however, that the object in both languages is governed by a preposition understood.  

41. "A jar (or vessel) will long retain the odour with which (when) fresh it has once been tinged,"  

42. Culturæ—to learning or philosophy. Governed by commodet. See Observation 6, under Rule 3.  

43. "You see with how much labour of mind and body you shun those misfortunes which you believe (to be) the greatest;" viz. a small income and degrading rejection (when seeking a political office).  

Quae maxima credis. Mala is the object of devites, and the antecedent of quae, and this quae is the accusative subject of esse understood: mala is out of its proper clause as the antecedent. This is a species of attraction, the name given to a construction of which the Latin and especially the Greek writers were very fond.  

Censum, repulsam, in apposition with mala.  

Ne cures ea—do you not wish, i. e. will you not learn, and hear, and intrust yourself to a better person (one of more experience, i. e. a philosopher), that you may not (lest you may)
regard those things which you foolishly admire and wish for. 

Nē is equivalent to ut non.

44. Minor—until (the horse) worse, i.e. vanquished in the long conflict.

Discessit, the subject is equus.

Sic qui—in like manner the man (homo, understood) who fearing poverty gives up his liberty (cāret libertāte), preferable to metals, wretch that he is (improbus agreeing with homo), will carry a master and will be a slave for ever, because he will not know (how) to use a little, i.e. to be content with a competency.

Libertāte is the ablative governed by cāret; it will be laid down hereafter that verbs of abounding and the opposite are followed by the ablative.

Metallis, parvo. For the syntax of these words respectively consult Rule 10, and Observation 6, Rule 3. Also with regard to the adjective parvo, consult Rule 15.

45. "One man (hic) fears the load as too great for his little soul and little body (literally, greater than his soul, &c. &c.). Another (hic) goes under it, and carries it through. Either virtue is an empty name, or the man who has made the attempt justly lays claim to the glory and the reward."

46. Consulares omnes—all persons of consular rank.

Magnus atque clarus. See Rules 15 and 13.

47. "I was aware that they (the Romans) had often contended against (with, cum) numerous legions of the enemy with small forces (a handful of men). I had known that wars had been waged (gesta esse) against opulent kings with small resources; moreover (ad hoc, in addition to this) that they (I had known that they, the Romans) had often endured the shock (a reverse) of fortune; (I had known) that the Greeks were before (excellent) the Romans in eloquence, that the Gauls (excelled them) in the glory of war (military glory). And to me, pondering over many things, it was evident that the distinguished virtue of a few citizens had accomplished all, and by this means that it had happened that poverty overcame riches, and a few men (paucitas) overcame a great number.

Contendisse, gesta esse, toleravisse, fuisse, patravisse, factum esse. The accusative subjects of these infinitives respectively are, Romanos, bella, Romanos, Græcos, and Gallos, virtutem, the whole sentence from uti to superaret inclusive.

Constat. The subject is the whole sentence from paucorum to superaret inclusive.

48. Cato, the subject of habebatur, understood.

Ille—huic. The former became (factus est) illustrious by his
clemency and compassion; austerity of manner had imparted dignity to the latter (huioc). When hic and ille are so used, hic signifies the latter; ille, the former.

His genus— their family extraction, or rank, age, (and) eloquence were nearly (things) equal. His is the dative for the genitive complement. See Observation 9, under Rule 5. Aequalia is the nominative plural of the adjective, and neuter as qualifying three nouns all neuter.

Clarus, magnus. For the syntax of these words consult Rules 13 and 15.

49. “At the death of Numa the government returned to an interregnum.” Morte may be regarded as the ablative of the cause. See Rule 6.

Inde—after that the people elected as king Tullus Hostilius, the grandson of (that) Hostilius, whose stand (pugna) against the Sabines at the bottom of the citadel had been well known.

Patres auctores facti (sunt)—the fathers became approvers (of the act); i. e. gave their assent. For the syntax of auctores consult Rule 13.

50. Confecto praelio—the battle being finished. See Rule 14.

Fuisset. See Observation 1, under Rule 1. The principle enunciated in this observation with regard to two singular nouns copulatively connected is more frequently neglected in Latin than in English.

Quem quisque. Both quisque and locum are out of their own clause. This also is a species of attraction: the order should be, Nam fere quisque tegebati eum locum corpore, amissa anima, quem ceperat pugna.

Amissa anima—his life being lost. “When he had lost his life.”

Paullo diversius—a little farther asunder.

Adversis vulneribus—with adverse wounds. “Wounds in their front.”

A suis—from his men (militibus).

Quam habuerat vivus—which he (when) alive had possessed.

51. “Having thus spoken he dismissed him with a letter, which he should deliver (to deliver, in English) to Micipsa.” Literae, in the plural, signifies an epistle; litera, in the singular, a letter of the alphabet.

Earum sententia hæc erat—this was (is, in English) a copy of it.

Longe maxima—the valour of your Jugurtha shone forth conspicuous (was by far the greatest).

Summa ope nitemur—we (I) shall endeavour with all my power that he be the same to the senate, &c. &c. i. e. that he be in equal estimation, &c. &c.
Pro nostra amicitia—in regard of our friendship.

Ita esse—when he understood that those things (ea) which he had heard by report were so (as he had heard them). Esse. The subject is ea=eas res, the antecedent of quæ.

Cum—tum. These are correlative terms, and when so related the former signifies, as well, the latter, as.

Filiis. The ablative, which, though plural, is in apposition with Adherbale and Hiempsale, both together making a plural.

Rules.

16. An adjective in the neuter gender is followed sometimes by the genitive of the noun which it qualifies.

17. Adjectives which signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, care, fear, guilt, and various affections of the mind are followed by a genitive.

18. Adjectives and verbs which signify profit or loss, likeness and unlikeness, &c. &c. are followed by a dative.

19. Verbal adjectives ending in ax are followed by a genitive; and verbal adjectives ending in bilis, and participles in dus, are followed by the dative.

20. Adjectives and verbs signifying plenty or want, govern, sometimes the genitive, sometimes the ablative: the verbs, however, most frequently the ablative.

21. The adjectives dignus, indignus, praeditus, captus, contentus, &c. &c., require an ablative.

22. The verb esse, implying possession, property, or duty, is followed by a genitive; which, however, is not governed by esse itself, but is the complement of some noun understood.

23. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, warning, &c. &c., are followed, in the active voice, by an accusative expressing the person accused, &c. &c., and by a genitive expressing the crime, &c. &c. In the passive voice this genitive only is retained.

24. All verbs used acquisitively, that is, expressing something done for, or to a person or thing, require the dative of such person or thing. Some of such verbs take after them, in addition, an accusative, as being transitive verbs.

25. Verbs of asking, teaching, clothing, concealing, admonishing, &c. &c., govern two accusatives—one of the person, another of the thing. In the passive voice the accusative of the thing only is retained.

26. A preposition in a compound word requires after it the case which the preposition governs when not in a compound.

27. Natus, satus, creatus, ortus, editus, take after them an ablative, with or without the prepositions, e, ex, &c. &c.
28. The supine in *um* follows verbs implying motion, and the supine in *u* follows adjectives; the former has an active, the latter a passive signification.

29. The part affected is put in the accusative, which, as grammarians lay down, is governed by *quoad* or *secundum*, prepositions implying *as to*.

30. The gerund in *di* serves as a genitive case, the gerund in *do* as a dative or ablative, and the gerund in *dum* as an accusative.

31. The word which expresses the price of an article is put in the ablative case, except the adjectives *tanti*, *quantae*, *minoris*, *tantvis*, *quantilibet*, *quantique*, which are expressed in the genitive.

32. The name of a town (if of the first or second declension and singular number) is put in the genitive, which answers to the question — *where*?

*Note.—* In like manner are used the genitives *humi*, *domi*, *belli*, *militice*.

33. If the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, it is put in the ablative.

34. The name of the place towards which motion is directed is put in the accusative, with or without a preposition governing such case.

**Sentences.**

1. *Postremo, omnes quos flagitium, egestas, conscius animus exagitabat; ii Catilinae proximi familiaresque erant.* Quod si quis etiam a culpa vacuus in amicitiam ejus inciderat, quotidiano usu atque illecebris facile par similisque ceteris efficiebatur.

2. *Ubi satis explorata sunt, quae voluit, in unum omnes convocat, quibus maxima necessitudo et plurimum audaciae.*

3. *Ceterum juventus sed maxime nobilium, Catilinae inceptis favebat.* Quibus in otio vel magnifice, vel molliter vivere copia erat, incerta pro certis, bellum, quam pacem malebant. Fuere item ea tempestate, qui crederent Marcum Licinimum Crassum non ignorant consilii fuisse; quia Cneius Pompeius, invisus ipsi, magnum exercitum ductabat, cujusvis opes voluisse contra illius potentiam crescere, simul confisum, si conjuratio valuisse, facile apud illos principem se fore.

4. *Fuere ea tempestate, qui dicerent, Catilinam, oratione habita, humani corporis sanguinem, vino permixtum, in pateris circumtulisse; inde cum post exsecrationem omnes degustavissent, sicuti in solemnibus sacris fieri consuevit, aperuisse consilium suum, atque eo, dictitare, fecisse, quo inter se fidi magis forent, alius alii tanti facinoris conscii.* Nonnulli facta haec, multa pra-
terea, existimabant, ab iis, qui Ciceronis invidiam, quae postea orta est, leniri credebant atrocitate sceleris eorum, qui poenas dederant.

5. His rebus comparatis, Catilina nihilominus in proximum annum consulatum petebat; sperans, si designatus foret, facile se ex voluntate Antonio usurum. Neque interea quietus erat, sed omnibus modis insidias parabat Ciceroni. Neque illi tamen ad cavendum dolus, aut astutiae dearent, namque, a principio consulatus sui, multa pollicendo per Fulviam, effecerat, ut Quintus Curius, de quo paullo ante memoravi, consilia Catilinae sibi proderet. Ad hoc, collegam suum Antonium, pactione provinciae perpulerat, ne contra rempublicam sentiret; circum se præsidia amicorum occulte habebat. Postquam dies comitiorum venit, et Catilinae neque petitio, neque insidiae, quas consulibus fecerat prospere cessere, constituit bellum facere et extrema omnia experiri.

6. Igitur, perterritis ac dubitantibus ceteris, Cornelius, eques Romanus, operam suam pollicitus, et cum eo Lúcius Vargunteius, senator, constituere, ea nocte paullo post cum armatis hominibus introire ad Ciceronem ac imparatum confodere. Curius, ubi intelligit quantum periculi consuli impendeat, propere per Fulviam, dolum, qui parabatur, enunciat. Interea Manlius in Etruria plebem sollicitare, egestate simul ac dolore injuriæ novarum rerum cupidam.

7. Deos hominesque testamur, nos arma neque contra patriam cepisse, neque quo periculum homini faceremus, sed uti corpora nostra ab injuria tuta forent, qui miseri, egentes, violentia atque crudelitate foenatorum, plerique patriæ, sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus; neque cuquam nostrum licuit, more majorum, lege uti, neque amisco patrimonio, liberum corpus habere; tanta sævitia foenatorum atque prætoris fuit.

8. Igitur Publio Umbreno cuidam negotium dat, uti legatos Allobrogum requirat, eosque, si possit, impellat ad societatem belli; existimans, publice privatimque ære alieno oppressos, præterea, quod natura gens Gallica bellica esset, facile eos ad tale consilium adduci posse. Umbrenus, quod in Gallia negotiatus, plerisque principibus notus erat, atque eos noverat; itaque sine mora, ubi primum legatos in foro conspexit, percunctatus pauca de statu civitatis, et quasi dolens ejus casum, requirere cepit, "quem exitum tantis malis sperarent?" Postquam illos videt queri de avaritia magistratum, accusare senatum, quod in eo auxiliï nihil esset, miseriis suis remedium mortem expectare: "At ego," inquit, "vobis, si modo viri esse vultis, rationem
ostendam, qua tanta ista mala effugiatis." Hæc ubi dixit, Allobroges, in maximam spem adduxit, Umbrenum orare, uti sui misereretur: nihil tam asperum, neque tam difficile, quin cupidissime facturi essent, dum ea res civitatem ære alieno liberaret. Ille eos in domum Decimi Bruti perducit, quod foro propinqua, neque alienna consilii, propter Semproniam; nam tum Brutus ab Roma aberat. Præterea Gabinium accessit, quo major auctoritas sermoni inesset: eo praesente conjurationem aperit; nominat socios, præterea multos cujusque generis, quo legatis animus amplior esset; dein eos pollicitos operam suam dimittit.

9. Postquam, Cæsar dicendi finem fecit, ceteri verbo, alius aliì, varie adsentiebantur; at Marcus Porcius Cato, rogatus sententiam, hujuscemodi orationem habuit.

10. Postquam, ut dixi, senatus in Catonis sententiam discessit, consul, optimum factum ratus, nocem, quæ instabat, antecapere, ne quid eo spatio novaretur, triumviro, quæ supplicium postulabat, parare jubet; ipse, dispositis præsidiis, Lentulum in carcerem deduxit: idem fit ceteris per prætores. Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum adpellatur, ubi paullulum ascenderis ad laevam. Eum muniat undique parietes. In eum locum postquam demissus Lentulus, quibus praecipue erat, laqueo gulam fregere. Ita ille patricius, ex clarissima gente Corneliorum, qui consulare imperium habuerat, dignum moribus et factisque suis exitum vitae invent.
est, fertur saepe eo tacitus respiciens postremo dixisse, Urbem venalem et mature perituram, si emptorem invenerit.

13. Interea Jugurtha, ubi, quæ Metellus agebat, ex nunciis acceptis, diffidere suis rebus. Ac tum demum veram ditionem facere conatus est. Igitur legatos ad consulem cum suppliciis mittit, qui tantummodo ipsi liberisque vitam peterent, alia omnia dererent populo Romano. Sed Metello jam ante experimentis cognitum erat genus Numidarum insidium, ingenio mobili, novarum rerum avidum. Itaque legatos alium ab alio diversos adgreditur, ac, paullatim tentando, postquam opportunos cognovit, multa pollendo persuadet, uti Jugurtham maxime vivum, sin id parum procedat, necatum sibi traderent, ceterum palam, quæ ex voluntate forent, regi nunciari jubet.

14. Aurum per medios ire satellites
   Et perrumpere amat saxa, potentius
   Ictu fulmineo.

15. Divis orte bonis, optime Romulæ
   Custos gentis, abes jam nimium diu,
   Maturum reditum pollicitus patrum
   Sancto concilio, redi.
   Lucem redde tuae, dux bone, patriæ;
   Instar veris enim vultus ubi tuus
   Affulsit, populo gratior it dies,
   Et soles melius nitent.
   Ut mater juvenem, quem Notus invido
   Flatu Carpathii trans maris aequora
   Cunctantem spatio longius annuo
   Dulci distinct a domo,
   Votis omnibusque et precibus vocat,
   Curvo nec faciem littore dimovet;
   Sic desideriis icta fidelibus
   Quærit patria Cæsarem.
   Tutus bos etenim rura perambulat;
   Nutrit rura Ceres, almaque Faustitas;
   Pacatum volitant per mare navitæ;
   Culpari metuit Fides.
   Quis Parthum paveat? Quis gelidum Scythen?
   Quis, Germania quos horrida parturit
   Foetus, incolumi Cæsare? Quis fææ
   Bellum curet Iberiæ?
   Condit quisque diem collibus in suis,
   Et vitem viduas ducit ad arbores;
   Hinc ad vina redit lætus, et alteris
   Te menses adhibet Deum.
Te multa prece, te prosequitur mero
Defuso pateris, et Laribus tuum
Miscet numen, uti Græcia Castoris,
Et magni memor Herculis.
Longas O utinam, dux bone, ferias
Præstes Hesperieæ, dicimus integro
Sicci mane die, dicimus uvidi,
Cum sol Oceano subest.

16. Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus ætas,
Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit:
Quam neque finitimi valuerunt perdere Marsi,
Minacis aut Etrusca Porsenæ manus,
Æmula nec virtus Capuæ, nec Spartacus acer,
Novisque rebus insidēlis Allobroxi;
Nec fera cærulea domuit Germania pubē,
Parentibusque abominatus Annibal,
Impia perdemus devoti sanguinis ætas,
Ferisque rursus occupabitur solum.
Barbarus, heu! cineres insistet victor, et urbem
Equēs sonante verberabit ungula;
Quæque carent ventis et solibus, ossa Quirini
(NEGAS videre) dissipabit insolens.
Forte quid expediat, communiter, aut melior pars,
Malis carere quæritis laboribus?
Nulla sit hac potior sententia; Phocæorum
Velut profugit exsecrata civitates,
Agros atque Lares patrios habitandaque fana
Apris reliquit et rapacibus lūpis;
Ire pedes quocunque ferent, quocunque per undas
Notus vocabit, aut protervus Africus.

17. Qui fit, Mæcenas, ut nemo, quam sibi sortem
Seu ratio dederit, seu fors objecerit, illa
Contentus vivat: laudet diversa sequentes?
O fortunati mercatores! gravis annis
Miles ait, multo jam fractus membra labore.
Contra mercator, navem jactantibus Austriis,
Militia est potior; quid enim? Concurritur, horæ
Momento cita mors venit, aut victoria læta.
Agricolam laudat juris legumque peritus,
Sub galli cantum consultor ubi ostia pulsat.
Ille, datis vadibus, qui rure extractus in urbem est,
Solos felices viventes clamat in urbe.
Cætera de genere hoc (adeo sunt multa) loquacem
Delassare valent Fabium.
18. Egressum magna me exceptit Aricia Roma
Hospitio modo. Rhetor comes Heliodorus,
Graecorum linguae doctissimus: inde Forum Appī
Differtum nautis, cauponibus atque malignis.
Hoc iter ignavi divisimus, altius ac nos
Præcinctis unum. Minus est gravis Appia tardis.
Hic ego propter aquam, quod erat tetrerrima, ventri
Indico bellum, cœnantes haud animo æquo
Exspectans comites. Jam nox inducere terris
Umbras, et cœlo diffundere signa parabat;
Tum pueri nautis, pueris convicia nautae
Ingerere. Huc appelle. Trecentos inseris, ohe,
Jam satis est. Dum æs exigitur, dum mula ligatur,
Tota abit hora. Mali culices, ranæque palustres
Avertunt somnos.

Tandem fessus dormire viator
Incipit, ac missae pastum retinacula mulae
Nauta piger saxo religat, stertitque supinus.
Jamque dies aderat, cum nil procedere lintrem
Sentimus: donec cerebrosus prosilit unus,
Ac mulæ nautæque caput lumbosque saligno
Fuste dolat, quarta vix demum exponimur hora.

19. Nunc ad me redeo, libertino patre natum,
Quem rodunt omnes libertino patre natum;
Nunc, quia, Mæcenas, tibi sum convictor, at olim
Quod mihi pareret legio Romana tribuno.
Dissimile hoc illi est, quia non, ut forsit honorem
Jure mihi invideat quivis, ita te quoque amicum.
Præsertim cautum dignos assumere, prava
Ambitione procul. Felicem dicere non hoc
Me possum casu, quod te sortitus amicum:
Nulla etenim mihi te foris obtulit, optimus olim
Virgilius, post hunc Varius, dixere quid essem.
Ut veni coram, singultim paucæ locutus,
(Infans namque pudor prohibebat plura profari).
Non ego me claro natum patre, non ego circum
Me Satureiano vectari rura caballo,
Sed, quod eram, narro. Respondes, ut tuus est mos,
Pauca. Abeo, et revocas nono post mense, jubesque
Esse in amicorum numero. Magnum hoc ego duco,
Quod placui tibi, qui turpi secernis honestum,
Non patre præclaro, sed vita et pectore puro.

20. Ibam forte via sacra, sicut meas est mos,
Nescio quid meditans nugarum, et totus in illis;
Accurrit quidam notus mihi nomine tantum, Arreptaque manu, Quid agis, dulcissime, rerum? Suaviter, ut nunc est, inquam, et cupio omnia quæ vis. Cum assectaretur, Numquid vis? occupo. At ille, Noris nos, inquit; docti sumus.

Ut illi
Nil respondebam, Misere cupis, inquit, abire, Jamdudum video, sed nil agis. Usque tenebo,
Persecur. Hinc quo nunc iter est tibi? Nil opus est te Circumagi; quendam volo visere, non tibi notum; Trans Tiberim longe cubat is, prope Cæsaris hortos. Nil habeo quod agam, et non sum piger. Usque sequar te. Demitto auriculas, ut iniquæ mentis asellus,
Cum gravissimus dorso suibi onus.


22. Non in caro nidore voluptas Summa, sed in teipso est. Tu pulmentaria quære Sudando.

23. Pauper Opimius argenti positi intus et auri, Quondam lethargo grandi est oppressus, ut hæres Jam circum loculos et claves latus ovensque Curreret. Hunc medicus multum celer atque fidelis
Excitat hoc pacto; mensam poni jubet, atque
Effundit saccos nummorum, accedere plures
Ad numerandum: hominem sic erigit. Addit et illud:
Ni tua custodis, avidus jam haece auferet haeres.
Men’ vivo? Ut vivas igitur, vigila: hoc age. Quid vis?
Deficient inopem venae te, ni cibus atque
Ingens accedat stomacho fultura ruenti.
Tu cessas? Agedum, sume hoc ptisanarium oryzæ.

Address of Venus to her husband, Vulcan, in which she asks a suit of armour for Æneas.

24. Protinus ut moneam (si quid monitoris egess tu)
Quid de quoque viro, et cui dicas, sæpe videto:
Percontatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est;
Nec retinent patulæ commissa fideliter aures;
Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile verbum.
Qualem commendes, etiam at etiam aspice, ne mox
Incutiant aliena tibi peccata pudorem.

25. Nox ruit, et fuscis tellurem amplectitur alis:
At Venus haud animo nequicquam exterrita mater,
Laurentumque minis et duro mota tumultu,
Vulcanum alloquitur, thalamoque hæc conjugas aureo
Incipit, et dictis divinum aspirat amorem:
Dum bello Argolicæ vastabant Pergama reges
Debita, casurasque inimicis ignibus arces;
Non ullum auxilium miseris, non arma rogavi
Artis opisque tuæ; nec te, charissime conjux,
Incassumve tuos volui exercere labores;
Quamvis et Priamì deberem plurima natis,
Et durum Æneas flevissem sæpe laborem.
Nunc, Jovis imperiis, Rutulorum constitut oris:
Ergo eadem supplex venio, et sanctum mihi numen
Arma rogo, genitrix nato. Te filia Nerei,
Te potuit lacrymis Tithonia flectere conjux.
Aspice qui coeant populi, quæ mœnia clausis
Ferrum acuant portis, in me excidiumque meorum.

26. Nunc age, Dardaniam prolem quae deinde sequatur
Gloria, qui maneant Itala de gente nepotes,
Illustres animas, nostrumque in nomen ituras,
Expediam dictis, et te tua fata docebo.

27. Cum Publius Rutilius Rufus amici cujusdam injustæ rogationi resisteret, atque is per summam indignationem dixisset, "Quid ergo mihi opus est amicitia tua, si, quod te rogo, non
facis?" "Imo," respondit Rutilius, "quid mihi tua, si propter te aliquid injuste facere me oporteat."


Tandem a Fabricio superatus, Tarentum refugit. Turn in Graeciam regressus, dum Argos oppugnat, ictu tegulae prostratus est.

29. Vix ea fatus erat, cum circumfusa repente
Scindit se nubes, et in æthera purgat apertum.
Restitit Æneas, claraque in luce refulsit,
Os, humerosque Deo similis; namque ipsa decoram
Cæsariem nato genitriz, lumenque juventæ
Purpureum, et lœtos oculis afflatis honores.

30. Hæc ubi Romæ comperta, senatus Catilinam et Manlius hostes judicat, ceteræ multitudini diem statuit, antequam sine fraude liceret ab armis discedere, præter rerum capitalium condemnatis.

31. Legati in Africam maturantes veniunt, eo magis, quod Romæ, dum proficisci parant, de prædio facto, et oppugnatione Cirtæ audiebatur.

32. Post, ubi silentium ceptic, producto Jugurtha, verba facit, Romæ Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat, scelera in patrem fratresque ostendit.

33. Extemplo tentanda fuga canit æquora Calchas,
Nec posse Argolicis excindii Pergama telis,
Omina ni repetant Argis, numenque reducant,
Quod pelago, et curvis secum advexere carinis.

34. Tunc sic Mercurium alloquitur, ac talia mandat;
Vade, age, nate, voca Zephyros, et labere pennis,
Dardaniumque ducem, Tyriæ Carthaginæ qui nunc
Exspectat, fatigque datas non respicit urbæ,
Alloquere, et celeres defer mea dicta per auras.

35. Devictis Sabinis, quum in magna gloria magnisque opibus regnum Tulli ac tota res Romana esset, nunciatum regi Patribusque est in monte Albano lapides cecidisse. Quod quum credi
vix posset, missis ad id visendum prodigium, in conspectu, haud aliter, quam quum grandinem venti glomeratam in terras agunt, crebri cecidere coelo lapides. Visi etiam audire vocem ingentem ex summi cacuminis luco, ut patrio ritu sacra Alhani facerent, quae, velut diis quoque simul cum patria relictis, oblivioni deranter, et aut Romana sacra susceperant, aut, fortunae, ut sive, obirati, cultum reliquerant deum. Romanis quoque ab eodem prodigio novendiale sacrum publice susceptum est, seu voce celesti ex Albano monte missa, (nam id quoque traditur,) seu aruspicum monitu. Mansit certe sallenne, ut, quandoque idem prodigium nunciaretur, feriae per novem dies aegerentur. Haud ita multo post pestilentia laboratum est; unde quum pigritia militandi oriretur, nulla tamen ab armis quies dabatur ab bellisco rege, salubriora etiam credente militiæ, quam donis, juvemn corpora esse, donec ipse quoque longinquo morbo est implicitus. Tunc adeo fracti simul cum corpore sunt spiritus illi feroce, ut, qui nihil ante ratus esset minus regium, quam sacris dedere animum, repente omnibus magnis parvisque superstitionibus obnoxius degeret, religionibusque etiam populum impleret.


37. Quamvis digressu veteris confusus amici,
Laudo tamen vacuis quod sedem figere Cumis
Destinet atque unum civem donare Sibyllæ.

38. In vallem Ægeriae descendimus, et speluncas
Dissimiles veris.

39. Quid Romæ faciam? Mentiri nescio: librum,
Si malus est, nequeo laudare, et poscere; motus
Astrorum ignoro, funus promittere patris
Nec volo nec possum, ranarum viscera nunquam
Inspxi.

40. Tanti tibi non sit opaci
Omnis arena Tagi, quodque in mare volvit aurum,
Ut somno careas, ponendaque præmia sumas
Tristis, et a magno semper timearis amico.

41. Da testem Romæ tam sanctum, quam fuit hospes
Numinis Ideai, procedat vel Numa, vel qui
Servavit trepidam flagranti ex æde Minervam:
Protinus ad censum, de moribus ultima fiet
Quæstio, quot pascit servos, quot possidet agri
Jugera? quam multa, magnaque paropside coenat?
Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca, Tantum habet et fidei.

42. **Agnine facto,**
Debuerant olim tenues migrâsse Quirites.
Haud facile emergunt, quorum virtutibus obstat
Res angusta domi; sed Româe durior illis
Conatus; magno hospitium miserabile, magno
Servorum ventres, et frugi cœnula magno.

43. Da spatium vitæ, multos da, Jupiter, annos,
Hoc recto vultu, solum hoc et pallidus optas.
Sed quam continuis et quantis longa senectus
Plena malis! deformem, et tetrum ante omnia vultum,
Dissimilemque sui, deformem pro cute pellem,
Pendentesque genas, et tales aspice rugas,
Quales, umbriferos ubi pandit Tabraca saltus,
In vetula scalpit jam mater simia bucca.
Plurima sunt juvenum discrimina, pulchrior ille
Hoc, atque ille alio; multum hic robustior illo:
Una senum facies, cum voce trementia membra,
Et jam læve caput, madidique infantia nasi.
Frangendus misero gingiva panis inermi;
Usque adeo gravis uxori, gnatisque, sibique,
Ut captatori moveat fastidia Cosso.

44. Nil ergo optabunt homines? Si consilium vis,
Permittes ipsis expendere numinibus quid
Conveniat nobis, rebusque sit utile nostris.
Nam pro jucundis aptissima quæque dabunt Dî,
Carior est illis homo, quam sibi, nos animorum
Impulsu, et cæca magnaque cupidine ducti,
Conjugium petimus, partumque uxoris;
at illis
Notum, qui pueri, qualisque futura sit uxor.
Oraudum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.
Fortem posce animum, et mortis terreore carentem:
Qui spatium vitæ extremum inter munera ponat
Naturæ, qui ferre queat quoscunque labores:
Nesiat irasci, cupiat nihil, et potiores
Herculis ærumnas credat, sævosque labores,
Et venere, et cœnis et plumis Sardanapali.
Monstro quod ipse tibi possis dare; semita certe
Tranquillæ per virtutem patet unica vitæ.
Nullum numen habes, si sit prudentia; sed te
Nos facimus, Fortuna, deam, caeloque locamus.

45. Sed civitas, incredibile memoratu est, adepta libertate,
quantum brevi creverit; tanta cupido gloriæ incesserat. Jam
primum juventus, simul laboris ac belli patiens erat, in castris per usum militiam discetbat, magisque in decoris armis et militari bus equis quam in conviviis lubidinem habebat. Igitur domi militiaeque boni mores colebantur; concordia maxima, minima avaritia erat; jus bonumque apud eos, non legibus magis quam natura valebat.

46. Numidæ paucis diebus jussa efficiunt: litteræ Adherbalis in senatu recitatas, quarum sententia haec fuit: "Non mea culpa sæpe ad vos oratum mitto, Patres, sed vis Jugurthae subigit, quem tanta lubido extingui me invasit, uti neque vos, neque deos immortales in animo habeat, sanguinem meum, quam omnia, malit."

47. Diis equidem auspiciibus reor, et Junone secunda, Huc currsum Iliacas vento tenuisse carinas. Quam tu urbem, soror, hanc cernes! quae surgere regna Conjugio tali! Teucrum comitantibus armis, Punica se quantis attollet gloria rebus! Tu modo posce deos veniam, sacrisque litatis, Indulge hospitio, causasque insigne morandi: Dum pelago desæavit hyems, et aquosus Orion, Quassataeque rates, et non tractabile coelum.

48. Sed ea animi elatio, quæ cernitur in periculis et laboribus, si justitia vacat pugnatque non pro salute communi, sed pro suis commodis, in vitio est. Non enim modo id virtutis non est, sed est potius inmanitatis, omnem humanitatem repellentis. Itaque probe definitur a Stoicis fortitudo, cum eam virtutem esse dicunt propugnament pro æquitate. Quocircum nemo, qui fortitudinis gloriae consecutus est insidiis et malitia laudem est adeptus. Nihil honestum esse potest, quod justitia vacat.


50. Otium divos rogat in patenti Prensus Ægæo, simul atra nubes
Condidit lunam, neque certa fulgent
Sidera nautis:
Otium bello furiosa Thrace,
Otium Medi pharetra decori,
Grospe, non gemmis neque purpura venale nec auro.

51. Quapropter consuetudo initand a medicorum est, qui leviter ægrotantes leniter curant, gravioribus autem morbis periculosas curationes et anci pites adhibere coguntur. Quare in tranquillo tempestatem adversam optare dementis est; subvenire autem tempestat e quavis ratione sapientis.

52. Justum et tenacem propositi virum
Non civium ar dor prava jubentium,
Non vultus instantis tyranni
Mente qui t solida, neque Auster
Dux inquieti turbidus Adriæ,
Nec fulminantis magna Jovis manus:
Si fractus illabatur orbis,
Impavidum ferient ruinæ.

53. Si ad impetrandum nihil causa haberem præter miserandam fortunam, quod paullo ante rex, genere, fama atque copiis potens, nunc deformat us ærumnis, inops, alienas opes exspecto, tamen erat majestatis Romani populi prohibere injuriam, neque cu jusquam regnum per scel us cresceret. Verum ego his finibus ejectus sum, quos majoribus meis populus Romanus dedit, unde pater et avus una vobiscum expulere Syphacem et Carthaginenses.

54. Nam vi quidem regere patriam aut parentes, quamquam et possis et delicta corrigas, tamen importunum est; cum præsertim omnes rerum mutationes cædem, fugam aliaque hostilia portandant; frustra autem niti, neque aliud fatigando, nisi odi um, querere, extremæ dementiæ est.

55. Causa fuit pater his, qui macro pauper agello
Noluit in Flavi ludum me mittere, magni
Quo pueri magnis e centurionibus orti,
Ibant.
Sed puerum est ausus Romam portare, docendum
Artes, quas doceat quivis eques, atque senator
Semet prognatos.

Notes on the foregoing Sentences.

1. Conscius animus—a mind conscious of guilt, a guilty conscience. Sceleris is understood, or some such word, governed by conscitus. See Rule 17.
II. This is a mere repetition of omnes. It is usual to sum up all the individuals when situated in this way. The individuals, quos flagitium, quos egestas, quos conscius animus exagitabat, may or may not be different characters, and the ii includes them all.

A culpa vacuus. See Rule 20. The preposition is thus frequently expressed.

Par similis. The former implies equality in acts of daring, the latter similarity in disposition. The two are not necessarily combined; hence there is no redundancy. For the syntax of ceteris, see Rule 18.

2. Ubi ea (for eae res) explorata sunt, quae voluit (explorari), in unum (locum) convocat omnes (eos) quibus (erat) maxima necessitudo et plurimum audaciam.

Explorata sunt. It has been already remarked that the particle which combines with esse to form the passive verb agrees, as an adjective, with the subject of such verb in gender, number, and case. Explorata is the nominative plural, neuter gender, to agree with ea.

Quae voluit. Quae is the accusative subject of explorari. See Rule 7.

Quibus erat. See Rule 9, and Observations under it.

Plurimum audaciam = plurima audacia. Rule 16.

3. Nobilium, governed by juventus, understood.

Inceptis. See Observation 6, under Rule 3.

Quibus in otio. The antecedent is ii, understood. The order is, "Ii quibus erat copia vivere in otio vel magnifice vel molliter malebant (habere) incerta pro certis, bellum quam pacem," —those who had the means of living in a time of peace, either in a splendid style or luxuriously, were better pleased to have uncertainty than certainty, war than peace.

Quibus erat. See Rule 9, and Observations.

Incerta. See Rule 15.

Qui crederent. The antecedent is homines, understood, or some such word. "There were persons, at that time, who."

Consilii. See Rule 17.

Invisus ipsi—an enemy to him (Crassus).

Voluisse—there were persons who believed that he (Crassus) was desirous that the power of any one should increase in opposition to his (Pompey's); trusting moreover (as he did) that if the conspiracy succeeded, he himself (se) would become a leader among them (the conspirators).

Confisum, agreeing with Crassum.

Principem. See Rule 13.

Apud illos. There is no word immediately expressed to which
this pronoun refers; it is, however, implied in the word *conjuratio*. This is a common usage in all languages.

4. *Qui dicerent*. See note under *qui crederent* in the preceding sentences.

*Oratione habita*—the speech having been delivered, after he had delivered his speech. See Rule 14.

*Catilinam*, the subject of *circumtulisse*. Rule 7.

*Inde*. This stands immediately connected with *aperuisse*. "There were people who believed that then (inde) he opened, &c. when all had tasted after the imprecation."

*Atque eo*—and they likewise said that he asserted that he did so for this reason, in order that they might be more faithful one to another, being conscious, each to the other, of such a deed.

*Dictitare, fecisse, aperuisse*. The subject is *Catilinam*.

*Ficta hæc*. *Hæc*, for *has res*; and *multa*, for *multas res*, the subject of *ficta (esse)*.

*Ciceronis invidiam*—the odium under which Cicero laboured.

*Pœnas dederant*—had suffered punishment.


*Si designatus foret*—if he could become consul elect.

*Facile se*—that he would easily use Antony according to his will, make what use he liked of him.

*Usurum (esse) Antonio*. See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Illi tamen*—Cicero.

*Per Fulviam*—by making many promises through the agency of Fulvia. See Rules 30 and 6.

*Ad hoc*—moreover, in addition to this.

*Ne sentiret*. *Ne* here is equivalent to *ut non*. "That he should not feel disposed against, side against, the commonwealth."

Observe, *ræmpublicam* is compounded of the noun *res*, and the adjective *publica*, both being declined according to their own declension.

*Extrema omnia*. See Rule 15.


*Eques, senator*. See Observation 10, under Rule 5.

*Constituere*. See Observation 1, under Rule 1.

*Ea nocte*. Governed by *in*, understood.

*Quantum periculi*. See Rule 16.

*Consuli impendeat*. Observation 6, Rule 3. *Im* is a modification of *in*.

*Sollicitare*—stirred up. Historians frequently use the infinitive for the past indicative.


7. *Nos cepisse*—that we have taken. Rule 7.

*Homini*—that we may offer danger to any man, expose any man to danger.

*Qui miseris.* *Qui* is the subject of *sumus*, and takes its number and person, not from an immediate antecedent, but from the possessive *nostra* in the preceding clause, *our bodies* being equivalent to *the bodies of us*. This is a usage of the English as well as the Latin language. Of this the following are examples:

"In the general warfare of the age, the advantage was on *their* side, *who* were most commonly the assailants."—Gibbon.

"In the same year was published my ‘Inquiry,’ which, in *my own* opinion, *who* ought not to judge on that subject, *is*, of all my writings, incomparably the best."—Hume.

"That our bodies may be protected from harm (the bodies of us), who, wretched, needy, are destitute, through the harsh treatment and cruelty of usurers, most of us of our country (the privileges of citizenship), but all of our characters and fortunes." *Patrici*, *fama*, *fortunis*, are all, though differing in case, governed by *expertes*. See Rule 20.

*Licuit*—nor was it lawful for any of us to take the benefit of the law, agreeably to the custom of our ancestors. The subject of this verb is the whole of the following clause.

*Uti lege.* See Observation 6, under Rule 3.


*Amisso patrimonio.* See Rule 14.


*Existimans.* The order is, "*Existimans eos oppressos ære alieno publice privatimque facile posse adduci ad tale consilium, quod gens Gallica bellica esset natura."*

*Eos*—that they being overwhelmed. The subject of *posse*. See Rule 7.

*Ære alieno*—with debt; literally, "other men's brass." This is governed by *oppressos*. See Rule 14.

*Publice privatimque*—publicly and privately, *i.e.* their state, and they themselves individually, were overwhelmed with debt.

*Ad tale consilium.* The preposition is often repeated before the governed word, as here. See Rule 26.

*Natura*—by nature. Rule 6.

*Quod in Gallia negotiatus (erat)*—because he had carried on business in Gaul.

*In eo*—in it, the senate.

*Nihil auxilii*—nothing of aid, no aid.

*Uti sui misereretur*—that he would take pity on them. See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Nihil tam asperum*—saying (understood) that nothing was so
disagreeable, nor so difficult, but that they would most anxiously do it, provided, &c.

*Quod foro*—because it (the house) was near the forum, and not unacquainted with the plot. In this latter clause the house, by a common figure of speech, is put for the inhabitants. *Consilii* is governed by *aliena* on the principle laid down in Rule 17.

*Quo major auctoritas*—in order that a greater weight would attach to his words. For the syntax of *sermoni*, see Observation 6, under Rule 3.

*Eo præsente*—he (Gabinius) being present, in his presence. Rule 14.

*Eos pollicitos*—then he dismisses them, having promised (after they had first promised) their assistance.


*Ceteri verbo*—the rest assented in support of different opinions (varie) one to one speaker, another to another (alius adsentiebatur aliis). *Ceteri verbo* is opposed to Marcus Cato and oratio.

*Rogatus sententiam*. See Rule 25.

10. *In sententiam discessit*—voted according to the opinion of Cato. *Discedere in sententiam alieujus* means “to agree with any one’s opinion,” and is a phraseology adopted on account of the habit of senators going to the same side of the house who agreed in opinion.

*Optimum factum ratus*—believing it (to be) the best deed (he could do) to anticipate the night which was coming on, i.e. to do what was to be done.

*Quod Tullianum*. The more natural antecedent is *locus*, in which case the relative would be *qui*. When however the relative is placed between two nouns agrees of different genders, it sometimes, as here with Tullianum, with the latter.

*Ad lævam*. Supply *manum*.

*Quibus præceptum erat*—those persons to whom such command had been issued, &c.


*Versari*. The historical infinitive for versabatur.

*Laborantibus succurrere*—brought succours to those in distress.

See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Omnia providere*—took all possible precautions.

*Memor generis*. See Rule 17.

12. *Manifestus*—being clearly guilty of.

*Prius—quam*. These particles are connected in translation: “Did not give up struggling against the truth until.”

*Supra gratiam*—beyond the influence of his money; literally, “beyond his influence and his money.” This is a species of
Hendiadys; a mode of expression usual, especially in the poets, whereby one thing is represented as two.

*Parendi sibi.* See Rule 30, and Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Italia deceedere.* See Rule 26, which also explains the syntax of *Roma* in the next passage.

*Perituram.* Supply *esse.* The future infinitive.

13. *Accepit.* The object is *ea,* the antecedent of *quae,* the object of *agebat.*

*Diffidere suis rebus.* See Observation 6, Rule 3.

*Ipsi liberis vitam.* See Rule 24.

*Experimentis.* See Rule 6.

*Cognitum erat genus esse infidum*—it had been already known to Metellus by experience that the nation (family) of the Numidians was treacherous, (a nation) of a fickle disposition, and fond of change. The subject of *cognitum erat* is the sentence.

*Genus,* the accusative subject of *esse.*

*Ingenio mobili.* See the foregoing translation, and Observation 11, Rule 5. *Genus* is understood.

*Novarum rerum.* Rule 17.

*Tentando.* See Rules 6 and 30.

*Opportunos*—fit for his purpose.

*Pollicendo.* Rules 6 and 30.

*Jugurtham sibi traderent.* Rule 24.

*Maxime vivum*—alive especially; that is, if possible.

*Nunciari.* The subject is *ea,* the antecedent of *quae.* "He orders that such an answer should be openly given to the king as would be according to his (the king's) pleasure;" as would please him.

14. *Amat*—loves, *i. e.* is wont.

*Ictu.* See Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25, given by way of illustration under it.

15. *Divis orte.* See Rule 27.

*Pollicitus,* agreeing with *tu,* the subject of *abes.*

*Instar veris*—your countenance like the spring.

*Ut mater*—as a mother with vows, omens, and prayers calls for her youthful son, whom the south wind with adverse gales (*invido flatu*) detains from his sweet home, staying longer than a year (*anno spatio*) beyond the waters of the Carpathian sea, nor turns her gaze from the curved shore; in like manner his country, inspired with loyal wishes, seeks for Cæsar.


*Culpari metuit Fides*—honour is afraid of being blamed, *i. e.* does nothing worthy of censure.

*Scythen,* the accusative singular after a Greek declension. "The frozen Scythian."
Incolumi Caesar. See Rule 14.
Condit diem—finishes his days in his own hills. This is stated as one of the effects of peace.
Et vitem viduas—and marries the vine to the widowed trees; pursues the peaceful avocation of agriculture.
Alteris mensis—and invites you as a deity to his second course.
Defuso pateris. See Rule 26.
Ut Grecia. This is the subject of miscuit, understood.
Castoris Herculis memor—mindful of, i. e. grateful to. See Rule 17.
Ferias Hesperice. See Rule 24.
Dicimus integro—we pray (say so) this, fresh and fasting (sicci, agreeing with nos, the subject of dicimus), the day being whole (the ablative absolute), no part being taken therefrom, i. e. early in the morning.
16. Quam neque finitimi. The order is, "(Nos) impia ætas devoti sanguinis perdemus (Romam) quam neque," &c.—(We) an impious age of devoted blood will ruin that Rome which, &c.
Novisque—and the Gauls faithless (which they show) by revolutions. Novis rebus is the expression of the manner. See Rule 6.
Dissipabit—will insolently scatter the bones of Romulus, which want (are now free from the influence of) wind and sun.
Carent ventis. See Rule 20.
Forte quid expeditat—perchance the whole of you, or the better part, are asking what may be expedient (in order) to avoid (carere) these destructive evils.
Carere laboribus. See Rule 20.
Nulla sit—no opinion can be preferable to (better than) this (opinion). See Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25.
Velut profugit—in like manner as the state of the Phœceans fled, having uttered execrations (against such as should return), and left their fields, the homes of their fathers, and temples, to be inhabited by boars and ravenous wolves.
Habitanda apris—lupis. See Rule 19.
17. Qui fit—how does it happen? The sentence is the subject of this verb, and qui is the ablative expressive of the means. See Rule 6.
Ut nemo, quam—that no one lives contented with that lot which either reason may have given him, or chance thrown in his way. Sortem is out of its own clause: this is a species of attraction common to the Greek language. The order should be, "Ut nemo vivat contentus illa sorte, quam seu ratio dederit, seu fors objecerit sibi."
Quam ratio dederit sibi. See Rule 24.
Contentus illa sorte. See Rule 21.
Laudet diversa sequentes—that (every one) commends (men) following different (pursuits, negotia). See Rule 15.
Gravis annis—borne down with years. Rule 6.
Fractus membra—broken in (as to) his limbs. See Rule 29.
Mercator, the subject of ait, understood.
Navim, the old form of the accusative for naven.
Concurriritus—men engage. This is a specimen of what is called a verb impersonal. All active verbs may assume this form, their subject being changed into the ablative governed by a or ab. See Rule 8, and Explanation 2 attached thereto. Of this the following examples will suffice:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>ACTIVE VERB</th>
<th>IMPERSONAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Men engage,</td>
<td>Homines concurrunt,</td>
<td>Concurritur ab hominibus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We hear,</td>
<td>Nos audimus,</td>
<td>Auditur a nobis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They read,</td>
<td>Illi legunt,</td>
<td>Legitur ab illis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They have gone,</td>
<td>Illi iverunt,</td>
<td>Itum est ab illis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—The impersonal verb is always in the third singular, and in that tense which the personal verb would be expressed in.

Juris, legum peritus. See Rule 17.
Sub galli cantum—at cockcrow.
Rure extractus. See Rule 26.
Datis vadibus—having given bail. Ablative absolute.
Hospitio modico—in an indifferent inn.
Heliodorus, the subject of fuit, understood.
Rhetor. See Observation 10, Rule 5.
Linguae doctissimus. See Rule 17.
Forum Appi. Appii Forum, the name of a place. Appi is contracted or syncopated for Appii. This is the subject of excepit, understood.
Differtum nautis. See Rule 20.
Hoc iter—we, being lazy, made two of this journey, (which is but one) for persons better prepared (girded higher) than we.
Minus est—the Appian Way is less troublesome to bad travellers.
Quod erat—because it was.
Venti indico bellum—proclaim war on my stomach, i.e. deny it the luxury of water. See Rule 24.
Exspectans—awaiting with impatience (haud æquo animo) my companions (whilst) supping.
Diffundere signa—to display the stars.
Ingerere, the infinitive for the imperfect tense.
Missæ pastum—let loose to feed. Rule 28.
Mihi pareret tribuno. Observation 6, Rule 3, and Observation 10, Rule 5.
Hoc illi—this (last-named reason) is unlike the former. Hic and ille refer, the former to the nearer, the latter to that more remote.
Cantum, agreeing with te. Dignos, equivalent to tantum dignos, "but those that are worthy."
Privam ambitionem procul—depraved ambition being far removed from you; that is, you have no sinister motives in patronizing those whom you admit to your friendship.
Hoc quod te sortitus—I cannot pronounce myself happy on this account, because I obtained you as a friend by chance. Understand sum with sortitus.
Singultim—in a broken, interrupted manner.
Quid nugarum. See Rule 16.
Arrepta manu—and having seized my hand, (he says, inquit) What thing are you doing (How do you do), my dearest friend?
Quid rerum. See Rule 16.
Arrepta manu, ablative absolute.
Suaviter ut—pretty well as matters are now, and I wish you may have what you desire, i. e. I wish you the same: cupio ut habeas omnia quae vis habere.
Numquid vis? occupo—I am beforehand in asking, Do you want any thing? But he replies, That you may know me, we are learned, i. e. I am a man of letters. The busybody speaks of himself in the first person plural, as being, in his own estimation, of some importance.
Nil agis—you do nothing, i. e. 'tis no use for you.
Iter est tibi?—whither are you going hence? See Rule 9, and Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22, illustrative thereof.
Cum gravius—when a heavier load than usual comes on (is put on) his back.
21. Ultra legem—beyond the law which obtains in such matters.
Similes meorum. Adjectives of likeness sometimes are found with a genitive. See Rule 18. Grammarians make this distinction: the dative expresses the external appearance; the genitive the disposition and character in which the similarity exists.
Deduci—spun out; opposed to the art of good composition.
Trebati. See Note 2, under Declension 2.
Quiescas—you must be quiet: the answer of Trebatius. The following is a dialogue between him and Horace.

Ne faciam = ut non faciam—do you say that I am not to compose verses at all?

Tiberim. See Rule 26.

Somno quibus. Rule 9, and Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22.

Sub noctem properly signifies "at the approach of night:" sub, signifying "approach to," governs an accusative. Here the expression is equivalent to our "over night."

Amor scribendi. Rule 30.

Laturus—about to receive, i.e. sure to receive; agreeing with tu, the subject of aude.

Cupidum, agreeing with me, the object of deficiunt.

Gallos pereuntes—the Gauls perishing with the spear broken in them.

Labentis equo—falling from his horse.

Attamen et justum—nevertheless you may describe him just and brave, as the wise Lucilius (described) Scipio.

Res ipsa feret—an occasion itself, a real opportunity will offer itself.

Flacci, one of the names of Horace.

Cui male si, a metaphor taken from the stable.


Multum celer—a man of much energy of character.

Men' vivo? Mene vivo?—is it whilst I am alive? Ne, an interrogative particle; "whether I being alive," the ablative absolute.

Vigila—be on your guard.

Accedat stomacho. Observation 6, Rule 3.

Quanti, parvo, octussibus. Consult Rule 31.

24. Si quid monitoris—if you want an adviser in any respect.

Quid is the accusative neuter, governed by secundum or quoad. See Rule 29. For the syntax of monitoris, consult Rule 20.

Quid sæpe—often consider what you say, of what man you say it, and to whom.


25. Haud nequicquam—with good reason.

Dum bello—whilst the Grecian kings were devastating in war Pergamus (Troy), due (to them by fate).

Ergo eadem—therefore I, the same, (now) come a suppliant, and ask you, a divinity sacred to me (in my eyes), for arms.

Rogo te arma. Consult Rule 25.

Genitrix nato. "Ego genitrix rogo te arma nato."

26. Quæ gloria. Gloria is out of its proper clause; it should
be gloriam, the object of expediām: this is a species of attraction already explained. The order is, "Nunc age, expediām dictis gloriam quae deinde sequatur Dardaniam prolem, nepotes qui maneant (nos) de Itala gente, illustres animas, quae (animas) ituras in nostrum nomen."

Te tua fata docebo.  Rule 25.
27. Mihi opus est amicitia.  Rules 5, Observation 12, and 9, Sentences 19, 20, 21, 22.

Quod te rogo.  The antecedent is id, the object of facis. For the syntax of quod and te, consult Rule 25.

Oporteat.  The subject is the whole clause in which it stands.
Amicus gratulantibus, ablative absolute.
Honestis vulneribus—with wounds in their breast.
Imperio potiri.  Observation 6, Rule 3.
Mihi erat habenti.  The latter agrees with mihi, "for me having," i. e. if I had.

Tarentum, in Græciam.  Consult Rule 34.
29. Æthera.  The accusative of æther, after a Greek declension.

Os, humeros Deo similis.  Rules 18 and 29.
Ipsa genitrix—his mother herself, Venus.
Afflārat, for afflaverat.
Comperta, supply sunt.
Sine fraude—with impunity, i. e. with the assurance of safety.

Condemnatis.  The syntax of this is the same as that of multitudini, governed with diem by statuit. "They appoint a day for the rest of the multitude, except," i. e. it does not so appoint a day for those convicted of capital offences.

Rerum capitalium.  See Rule 23.
33. Tentanda, supply esse—that the seas are to be (must be) attempted in flight.

Argis.  Consult Rule 33.
34. Carthagine.  Rule 33.

Defer.  Imperative, second singular of fero. Three other verbs omit the e in the same part: these are, facio, dico, duco.
35. Nunciatum est.  The subject is lapides cecidisse.

Visi, supply sunt—they appeared to hear a voice (directing them).

Quae oblivioni.  See Rule 24.

Fortunae, governed by irati—incensed at fortune, as it usually happens in such cases (ut fit).  See Observation 6, Rule 3.
Haud ita molto post—not very long after.
Laboratum est (a Romanis)—the Romans were attacked. They laboured, literally: the verb impersonal, equivalent to Romani laboraverunt. See Note and illustrations on this form of the verb under Sentence 17 of the foregoing.
Pigriitia militandi—a disinclination to military service. Rule 30.
Militiae quam domi—in war than in peace. See Note under Rule 32.
Obnoxius degeret—became a slave to.
36. Curibus—at Cures. See Rule 33.
Consulissimus juris. See Rule 17.
37. Cumis—Cumæ, the residence of the celebrated Sibyl. See Rule 33.
38. Dissimiles veris, supply speluncis, and see Rule 18.
Veris—the natural caves.
40. Tanti. See Rule 31. "Let not all the sand of the Tagus be of so much value in your estimation that (for it) you should want sleep, and accept rewards to be (which ought to be) rejected, and be always the object of suspicion by a friend in power."
A magno timearis amico. Note 2, under Rule 8, and Sentences 13, 14, &c. illustrative thereof.
41. Romæ. Rule 32.
Numinis—the host of the Idæan deity. This was Scipio Nasica, adjudged to be one of the best of men. He was deemed the most worthy to receive the image of the Goddess Cybele into his house, till a temple should be built for it. She was called Idæa, from Ida, a hill in Phrygia, whence her worship was introduced to Rome.
Numa—the first king who civilized the Romans, remarkable for his uprightness.
Vel qui—Lucius Metellus, who preserved the Palladium, the image of Minerva, when it stood, as it were, trembling for its safety, the temple in which it was being on fire.
Protinus ad censum—the first inquiry will be as to his income.
Quantum nummorum, tantum fidei. Rule 16.
42. Agmine facto, ablative absolute.
Migrasse, syncopated for migravisse.
Quorum virtutibus obstat domi. For the syntax of quorum, see Note under Rule 12, and Rule 5; for virtutibus, Observation 6, Rule 3; and for domi, Note under Rule 32.
*Romæ conatus.* The latter is the subject of *est*, understood. For the syntax of *Romæ*, see Rule 32.  

*Hospitium, caenula, ventres*, the subjects respectively of *constat* and *constant*, understood.  

*Magno*, the ablative governed by the preceding verbs. Rule 31.  


*Pulchrior ille hoc*—this one is fairer than that. *Hoc*; for the syntax, see Rule 10, and Examples 23, 24, and 25, illustrative thereof.  

*Frangendus miser*—and bread must be broken by the poor wretch with a toothless gum.  

*Misero frangendus.* See Rule 19.  

*Captatoris Cosso.* See Observations 9 and 10, Rule 5.  

44. *Nil ergo*—the language of an objector.  

*Conveniat nobis.* Observation 6, Rule 3.  

*Di*, syncopated for *Divi*, the nominative plural of *Divus*.  

*Impulsu, cupidine.* Rule 6.  

*Notum, supply est.* The subject is the following.  

*Qui pueri*—what sort the children will turn out (*futuri sint*).  

*Orandum est.* The subject is the following clause.  

*Ut sit*—that we may have. Supply *nobis*, and consult Rule 9, and Observations 19, 20, &c. explanatory thereof.  

*Terrore carentem.* Rule 20.  

*Qui ponat*—which can reckon.  

*Potiore venere, caenis, plumis.* Consult Rule 10, and Sentences 23, 24, 25, illustrative thereof.  

*Si sit prudentia, supply nobis.* See Note under *ut sit*, above.  

45. *Incredibile memoratu.* See Rule 28.  

*Adepta libertate*, ablative absolute.  

*Laboris patiens*—able to endure labour. With an accusative this adjective signifies actually enduring.  

*Lubidinem habebant*—took pleasure.  

*Domini, militiae.* Note under Rule 32.  

*Legibus, natura.* Rule 6.  

46. *Recitatae, supply sunt*—a letter was read. In the plural number *literæ*, or *litteræ*, as here, signifies “an epistle;” in the singular *litera* signifies “a letter of the alphabet.”  

*Mea culpa*, the ablative of the cause. Rule 6. “Not through my fault I send.” “It is not through my fault that I send” is more agreeable to the usage of the English language.  

*Oratum.* See Rule 28.  

*Lubido extinguendi.* See Rule 30.  

*In animo habeat*—regards.
Malit. Supply uti from the preceding clause, and habere to
govern sanguinem and omnia, and, in reference to the latter, con-
sult Rule 15.

47. Diis auspiciis—under the auspices of the gods; literally,
"by the gods as the authors."

Diis, for Divis, and Junone are the ablatives of the cause, and
vento of the instrument, governed by tenuisse. Consult Rule 6.

Quam tu urbem—what a city will you see this!

Teurum, syncopated for Teurorum.


Causas morandi. Rule 30.

Orion, cælum, rates, the subjects respectively of est and
sunt, understood.


In vitio est—is at fault, i.e. is a crime.

Non enim modo—for not only does it not belong to virtue.

Virtutis, immanitatis. Consult Rule 22.

49. Quis desiderio—what feeling of shame should there be, or
moderation, for the regret of so dear a person, i.e. in regretting.

Capitis—the head. By synecdoche for the individual.


Bonis flebilis. Rule 19.


Frustra pius—affectionate to no purpose.

Non ita creditum—not entrusted to you on such conditions,
i.e. to live for ever.

Poscis Quinctilium deos. Rule 25.


Prensus—a person caught in the wide Ægean sea. Supply mari.


51. Dementis est—is the part of a madman. Rule 22.

Subvenire tempeстатi. Observation 6, Rule 3.

Sapientis, supply est, and see Rule 22.

52. Tenacem propositi—firm in the execution of his purpose.

See Rule 19.

53. Ad impetrandum—to obtain my request.

Nihil causæ—nothing of a cause, no cause.

Erat majestatis, in the sense of esset. See Rule 22. "It
would belong to the majesty."

His finibus ejectus sum. See Rule 26.

Quos majoribus dedit. Rule 24.

54. Parentes—subjects, persons obeying.

Extremæ dementiæ est. Rule 22.

55. Causa his—the cause of these things. See Observation 9,
Rule 5.
Flavi, syncopated for Flavii.
Portare Romam. Consult Rule 34.
Docendum artes—to be taught those accomplishments. Docendum agrees with me puerum, the object of portare. For the syntax of artes, consult Rule 25.
Quas eque quivis doceat prognatos semet—which any knight might teach (those) sprung from himself, his children. For the syntax of quas, prognatos, consult Rule 25, and Note under Rule 12; and for semet, Rule 27.
DICTIONARY OF THE WORDS
IN THE
FOREGOING SENTENCES.

A.

A, ao, prep., from, oy.
abduco, xi, ctum, 3, I lead away.
abeo, ivi, itum, irr., I go away, I depart.
abominor, abominatus, abominari, dep., I detest.
absum, abfui, abesse, irr., I am absent, I am distant.
ac, conj., and.
accedo, essi, essum, 3, I go to, accede, acquiesce.
accendo, di, sum, 3, I set on fire, burn, excite.
accipio, epi, eptum, 3, I receive, take, accept.
accitus, us, 4, m., a call, invitation.
accuro, ri, rsum, 3, I run to, hasten.
accuso, avi, atum, 1, I accuse, blame.
acer, ris, e, sharp, sour, swift, active, fierce.
acervus, i, 2, m., a heap.
acies, ei, 5, f., an edge or point, an army in battle array.
actio, onis, 3, f., an action, a suit or process at law.
actus, a, um, part. of ago, done, performed.
acuo, ui, 3, I sharpen, excite, provoke.
ad, prep., to, towards.

addo, didi, ditum, 3, I give to, add.
adduco, xi, ctum, 3, I lead to, bring, induce.
adeo, adv., so, therefore, very much.
adeo, ivi and ii, itum, I go, come to, address.
adeptus, part. of adipiscor, having obtained.
adgreior, same as aggregior.
Adherbal, alis, 3, m., Adherbal.
adhibeo, ui, itum, 2, I apply, admit, send for.
adhoc, adv., in addition to this, moreover.
adipiscor, eptus sum, pisci, dep., I obtain, get.
adungo, nxi, nctum, 3, I add, join to.
admiror, ratus sum, mirari, dep., I admire, wonder at.
adpto, tavi, tatum, 1, I adopt.
adpello, avi, atum, 1, I call, name, address.
Adria, æ, 1, f., the Adriatic Sea.
adsedeo, edi, sessum, 2, I sit by, close to.
adsentior, iri, nsus, dep., I assent or agree to, comply.
adsum, fui, esse, I am present.
adveho, xi, ctum, 3, I bring to, convey.
adverto, ti, sum, 3, I turn to, direct, apply.
adversus, a, um, part. of adverto.
adversus, prep., oppositeto, against.
Æacidas, æ, 1, m., Achilles, the
grandson of Æacus.
ædes, is, 3, f., a house, building, temple.
Ægeus, a, um, of or belonging to
the Ægean Sea.
Ægeria, æ, 1, f., the name of a
goddess.
ægroto, 1, I am sick.
æmulus, a, um, emulous, vying with.
Æneas, æ, 1, m., Æneas.
aequalis, e, equal.
aequitas, tatis, 3, f., equity, justice.
aequor, oris, 3, n., the sea, the
smooth surface of any thing.
aequus, a, um, equal, just, even.
æratus, a, um, made of brass.
aermuma, æ, 1, f., trouble, sorrow, misery.
æs, ris, 3, n., brass.
ætas, atis, 3, f., age.
aeternum, adv., for ever.
aeternus, a, um, eternal, everlasting.
aeter, ris, 3, m., the sky, firmament, heaven.
afló, avi, atum, 1, I blow, breathe upon.
afluigeo, atum, 1, I blow, favour.
Africa, æ, si, sum, 2, I shine upon, favour.
Africanus, i, m., the south-west wind.
age! } interj., come on!
agedum! } interj., come on!
agellus, i, 2, m., a little field.
ager, i, 2, m., a field, garden.
aggredior, ssus sum v. fui, edi, dep., I come up to, accost, attack.
agilis, e, nimble, active.
agito, avi, atum, 1, I agitate, revolve, consider.
agmen, inis, 3, n., a body of men,
an army in line of march, a number of men, a herd.
ago, egi, actum, 3, I do, act, transact.
agricola, æ, 1, m., a husbandman.
alienum, i, 2, n., a brass pot, caldron.
aio, defect., I say. See Defective Verbs.
ala, æ, 1, f., a wing.
Albanus, a, um, Alban.
Albanus, i, 2, m., an Alban.
alibi, adv., in another place, elsewhere.
alienus, a, um, what belongs to
another, strange, improper.
alis, a, aliquid or aliquod, some one, somebody.
aliquot, pl., indecl. adj., some, a few.
alter, adv., in another way, otherwise.
alius, a, ud, another, different.
Allobrogi, ogis, 3, m. and f., an
Allobrogian, an inhabitant of Savoy.
 alloquor, cutus sum, qui, dep.,
I address, speak to.
alus, a, um, kind, bountiful.
alve, adv., highly.
alter, era, erum, another.
alum, i, 2, n., the deep.
alus, a, um, high.
alis, oris, 3, m., a lover.
ambrogianus, ambagius (its only cases), 3, f., a turning, wind-
ing, circumlocution, a tedious story.
ambigue, adv., in a doubtful man-
er.
ambitio, onis, 3, f., ambition.
ambo, æ, o, both. See Declension of Adjectives.
amicitia, æ, 1, f., friendship.
amicus, i, 2, m., a friend.
amicus, a, um, friendly.
amitto, isi, ssum, 3, I lose, I let go, omit.
amo, avi, atum, 1, I love.
amplexus, a, um, having embraced (part. of amplexor).
amplus, a, um, large, ample.
anceps, cipitis, doubtful, dangerous, deceitful.
anchora, æ, 1, f., an anchor.
angustus, a, um, narrow, small, poor.
anima, æ, 1, f., the soul, life, breath.
animadverto, ti, sum, 3, I observe, perceive, punish.
animus, i, 2, m., the mind, spirit, courage, disposition.
Annibal, alis, 3, m., Hannibal.
annus, i, 2, m., the year.
annus, a, um, yearly, belonging to the year, happening once a year.
ante, prep., before.
antea, adv., before, formerly.
antecapio, cepi, septum, 3, I take beforehand, anticipate.
anterior, us, adj., comp., former, in front.
Antonius, ii, 2, m., Anthony.
antrum, i, 2, n., a cave.
aperitus, a, um, part. of aperio, opened.
Apollo, inis, 3, m., Apollo.
apelle! adv. of ejaculation, hither!
huc appelle! come hither!
apello, avi, atum, 1, I call, name, call to, accuse.
apello, puli, pulsum, 3, I drive, force, apply.
Appius, ii, 2, m., Appius.
Appius, a, um, of or belonging to Appius.
apo, avi, atum, 1, I fit, make fit, adapt.
apus, a, um, fit, adapted.
apud, prep., close by, near to, with, among.
aqua, æ, 1, f., water.
Aquarius, ii, 2, m., one of the signs of the zodiac.
aquosus, a, um, watery, wet.
arator, toris, 3, m., a ploughman.
aratum, i, 2, n., a plough.
arbor, oris, 3, f., a tree.
arca, æ, 1, f., a chest, coffar.
Arcadius, a, um, of or belonging to an Arcadian.
acesso, sivi, situm, 3, I send for, call, invite.
ardens, ntis, part. of ardeo, burning.
ardeo, rsi, rsum, 2, I burn, desire greatly, burn with rage.
ardor, oris, 3, m., a burning, great desire.
arena, æ, 1, f., sand, an arena.
argentum, i, n., silver.
Argolicus, a, um, of or belonging to Argos, Grecian.
Argos, eos, n. (declined like a Greek noun; but Argi, Argorum, pl. m.), Argos.
Aricia, æ, 1, f., the name of a city or town.
arma, orum, pl., 2, n., arms, implements.
armatus, a, um, part. of armo, armed.
armo, avi, atum, 1, I arm.
arripio, pui, ptum, 3, I snatch at, seize, take by force.
ars, tis, 3, f., an art, trade; art, artifice, cunning.
aruspex, icis, 3, m., a soothsayer.
arx, reis, 3, f., a citadel.
ascendo, di, nsum, 3, I ascend.
asellus, i, 2, m., a little ass.
asina, æ, 1, f., a she-ass.
aspecto, avi, atum, 1, I look at, have a view of.
asper, era, erum, rough, harsh, ill-natured.
aspicio, exi, ectum, 3, I behold, see, perceive, regard.
assector, tatus sum, tari, dep., I attend, wait upon, follow.
assumo, mpsi, mptum, 3, I assume, take, admit.
astrum, i, 2, n., a star.
astutia, æ, 1, f., craft, cunning.
at, conj., but.
ater, ra, rum, black, mournful, fatal.
Atheniensis, e, belonging to an Athenian.
Atheniensis, is, 3, m. or f., an Athenian.
atque, conj., and.
atrocity, tatis, 3, f., atrocity, cruelty.
atrox, ocis, adj., atrocious, cruel.
attamen, conj., but, but yet, nevertheless.
attentus, a, um, attentive, careful.
attollo, tuili, 3, I raise or lift up.
auctor, oris, 3, m., an author, the doer of a thing, an adviser.
auctoritas, tatis, 3, f., authority.
audacia, æ, 1, f., boldness, courage, impudence.
audax, acis, bold, courageous, impudent.
audeo, ausus sum, 2, I dare, am bold.
audio, ivi, itum, 4, I hear.
auféro, abstulii, ablatum (irr. compound of fero), I take or carry off.
aura, æ, 1, f., air, breath, favour.
aureus, a, um, golden, valuable.
aurícula, æ, 1, f., the ear.
auris, is, 3, f., the ear.
aurum, i, 2, n., gold.
auspex, picis, 3, m., a soothsayer, diviner.
Auster, tri, 2, m., the south wind.
ant, conj., or, either.
autem, conj., but, however.
auxílium, ii, 2, n., help, assistance.
avaritia, æ, 1, f., avarice.
averto, ti, rsum, 3, I turn off, turn away, avert.
avidus, a, um, greedy, desirous.

B.
barbarus, a, um, barbarous.
beatus, a, um, happy, blessed.
bellicosus, a, um, warlike.
bellum, i, 2, n., war.
bene, adv., well.
benefitium, ii, 2, n., kindness, a benefit.
bis, adv., twice.
Bocchus, i, 2, m., Bocchus.
Bomilcar, ris, 3, m., Bomilcar.
bonum, i, 2, n., goodness, virtue, equity.
bonus, a, um, good, just, equitable.
bos, ovis, 3, m. or f., an ox, a cow.
brevi, adv., shortly, in a short time.
brevia, ium, 3, n., fords, shallow places.
brevis, e, short, brief.
Brutus, i, 2, m., Brutus.
brutus, a, um, sluggish, inactive.
bucca, æ, 1, f., a cheek, a trumpet.

C.
caballus, i, 2, m., a horse.
cacumen, inis, 3, n., a top, the highest point.
cadaver, eris, 3, n., a dead body.
cado, ceceídi, casum, 3, I fall, happen.
cecus, a, um, blind, secret, dark, obscure.
cedes, is, 3, f., slaughter, murder, death.
celestis, e, heavenly, celestial.
ceruleus, a, um, blue, azure, sky-coloured.
Cæsar, aris, 3, m., Caesar.
cæsaries, ei, 5, f., hair.
ceterus, a, um, the rest, the other.
cælceus, i, 2, m., a shoe.
Calchas, ntis, 3, m., the name of a diviner.
calidus, a, um, warm, hot.
cano, cecei, cantum, 3, I sing, prophesy.
canto, avi, atum, 1, I sing.
cantus, us, 4, m., a song.
Capenus, a, um, Capene, Capenian.
capio, cepi, ptum, 3, I take.
capitalis, e, capital, worthy of death, deadly.
captator, oris, 3, m., a person who lies in wait, a flatterer, a syco-
pphant.
Capua, æ, 1, f., the name of a city in Italy.
caput, itis, 3, n., the head.
career, eris, 3, m., a prison.
careo, rui and cassus sum, carere, 2, I want, am without.
carina, æ, 1, f., the keel of a ship, a ship.
carmen, inis, 3, n., a song, verse, incantation, charm.
Carpathius, a, um, Carpathian.
carpo, psi, ptum, 3, I gather, rob, feed, calumniate.
Carthaginiensis, e, Carthagian.
Carthaginiensis, is, 3, m. or f., a Carthagian.
Carthago, inis, 3, f., Carthage.
carus, a, um, beloved, costly.
Castor, oris, 3, m., Castor.
castrum, i, 2, n., a camp.
casus, us, 4, m., a fall, chance, a happening.
Cato, onis, 3, m., Cato.
caula, a, um, defray, yield.
causa, æ, 1, f., a cause, reason.
cautus, a, um, cautious, wary, prudent, safe.
cavea, caui, cautum, 2, I take care, am on my guard.
Cecrops, opis, 3, m., Cecrops.
cede, ssi, ssum, 3, I go, yield, give place to.
celer, eris, quick, active, clever.
census, us, 4, m., a census, yearly income.
centurio, onis, 3, m., a centurion.
cerebrosum, a, um, passionate.
Ceres, eris, 3, f., f. Ceres.
cerno, crevi, cretum, 3, I perceive, discern.
certamen, inis, 3, n., a contest.
certe, adv., certainly.
certo, avi, atum, 1, I contend.
certus, a, um, certain.
cervix, icsi, 3, f., the neck.
cervus, i, 2, m., a stag.
charus, a, um, same as carus.
cibarium, ii, 2, n., meat, food.
cibus, i, 2, m., meat, food.
Cicero, onis, 3, m., Cicero.
circa, prep. and adv., about, around.
circumago, egri, actum, 3, I turn or go around.
circumfere, tuli, latum (irreg. compound of fero), I bear or carry around.
circumnusus, a, um, poured around, surrounding.
Cirta, æ, 1, f., the name of a town.
cithara, æ, 1, f., a harp.
citra, prep., on this side.
citus, a, um, part., moved, provoked.
citus, a, um, quick.
civilis, e, of a city, courteous.
civis, is, 3, m. or f., a citizen.
civitas, atis, 3, f., a state, city.
clades, is, 3, f., loss, defeat, disaster.
clam, adv., privately.
clamo, avi, atum, 1, I cry out, exclaim.
clarus, a, um, clear, well-known, illustrious.
classis, is, 3, f., a class, fleet.
claudo, si, sum, 3, I shut.
clavis, is, 3, f., a key.
cliens, tis, 3, m. and f., a client, a dependant.
Cneius, ii, 2, m., Cneius.
colum, i, 2, n., heaven, the sky.
cena, æ, 1, f., a supper.
ceno, avi, atum, 1, I sup.
cœnula, æ, 1, f., a small supper.
cœpi, verb defect., I have begun.
cognatus, a, um, allied by blood.
cognatus, i, 2, m., a cousin.
cognosco, ovi, itum, 3, I know, learn, understand.
cogo, egi, actum, 3, I force, compel.
cohors, tis, 3, f., a cohort, troop, a company of people.
collectus, a, um, part. of colligo.
collega, æ, 1, m. or f., a colleague, partner, helper.
colligo, legi, lectum, 3, I collect, pluck, conclude.
collis, is, 3, m., a hill.
colo, 1, ultum, 3, I till, cultivate.
columen, inis, 3, n., support, stay, assistance.
colonna, æ, 1, f., a pillar.
comes, its, 3, m. or f., a companion.
comitium, ii, 2, n., an assembly, place of an assembly.
comitio, avi, atum, 1, I accompany.
commodo, avii, am, part. of committo.
committto, avi, isum, 3, I commit, entrust, engage in battle.
commode, atum, 1, lend, fit, adapt, profit.
communiter, adv., in common.
comparo, avi, atum, 1, I compare, procure.
comperio, ri, ratum, 4, I find out, understand.
complexor, plexus sum, ti, dep., I embrace, comprehend.
complexus, a, um, part. of complexor.
conclusio, onis, 3, f., lamentation.
compono, sui, situm, 1, I put together, compose.
conatus, us, 4, m., an attempt.
concido, idii, isum, 3, I cut off, cut in pieces, kill.
concilium, ii, 2, n., an assembly, a council.
concito, avi, atum, 1, I stir up, excite.
concludo, usi, usum, 3, I conclude, finish, infer.
concordia, ae, 1, f., concord, agreement.
concurro, ri, rsum, 3, I run together, agree.
condo, idii, itum, 3, I hide, finish.
condemnatus, a, um, part. of condemnio.
condemno, avi, atum, 1, I condemn.
confectus, a, um, part. of conficio.
confertus, a, um, thick.
conficio, eci, fectum, 3, I finish, wear out.
confido, idii, isum, 3, I confide, trust.
confusus, a, um (part. of confido, active in signification), trusting, confiding.
confodio, di, ssum, 3, I dig, stab.
confusus, a, um, confused, jumbled together.
congero, gessi, gestum, 3, I heap or pile together.
conjectus, a, um, part. of conjicio.
conjicio, eci, ectum, 3, I cast or throw together.
conjugium, ii, 2, n., marriage.
conjuratio, onis, 3, f., a conspiracy.
conjux, gis, 3, m. or f., a husband or wife.
connubium, ii, 2, n., marriage.
conor, conatus sum, ari, dep., I attempt.
conscius, a, um, conscious, aware of.
consequor, cutus sum, qui, dep., I follow up, reach, obtain.
conservo, avi, atum, 1, I preserve.
consido, sedi, sessum, 3, I sit down, settle, encamp.
consilium, ii, 2, n., counsel, advice, design, purpose.
constito, stiti, stitum, 3, I insist, agree, stand together.
conspectus, us, 4, m., a sight, view.
conspicio, exi, ectum, 3, I view, behold, consider.
constat, it is evident (3rd sing. of consto).
constituo, ui, utum, 3, I constitute, appoint, resolve, agree.
consto, stiti, stitum and statum, 1, I consist, agree with, am evident.
consuesco, evi, etum, 3, I am accustomed to.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consuetudo, inis, 3, f.</td>
<td>a habit, custom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consul, ulis, 3, m.</td>
<td>a consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consularis, e, of consular rank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consulatus, us, 4, m.</td>
<td>the consuls-ship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consulo, sului, sultum, 3</td>
<td>I ask or give advice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consultor, oris, 3, m.</td>
<td>one who asks advice, a client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consultus, a, um, part. of consulo, skilled.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contendo, ndi, nsum and ntum, 3</td>
<td>I strive, contend, aim at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentus, a, um, content.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continetia, æ, 1, f.</td>
<td>continence, moderation, forbearance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contingo, tigi, tactum, 3</td>
<td>I touch, happen, attain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuus, a, um, continual, constant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contra, prep., opposed to, opposite to, against.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contristo, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I make sad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convenio, eni, entum, 4</td>
<td>I come together, agree, suit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convicium, ii, 2, n.</td>
<td>reproach, abuse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convictor, oris, 3, m.</td>
<td>a companion at table, guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convivium, ii, 2, n.</td>
<td>a feast, banquet, entertainment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convoco, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I call together, convoke, summon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copia, æ, 1, f.</td>
<td>opportunity, abundance, resources, plenty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coram, prep., before, in presence of.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelii, orum, 2, m.</td>
<td>a family in Rome, the Cornelii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelius, ii, 2, m.</td>
<td>Cornelius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus, oris, 3, n.</td>
<td>a body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corriego, exi, etcum, 3</td>
<td>I correct, reform.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corripio, ui, eptum, 3</td>
<td>I seize, snatch, reproce.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corrumpo, upi, ptum, 3</td>
<td>I corrupt, waste, destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cossus, i, 2, m.</td>
<td>Cossus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassus, i, 2, m.</td>
<td>Crassus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crassus, a, um, thick, stupid.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creber, ra, rum, often, frequent, numerous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creditus, a, um, part. of credo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credo, didi, ditum, 3</td>
<td>I believe, trust, entrust.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cresco, evi, etum, 3</td>
<td>I grow, increase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crinis, is, 3, m.</td>
<td>hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crudelitas, atis, 3, f.</td>
<td>cruelty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubile, is, 3, n.</td>
<td>a bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubo, ui, itum, 1</td>
<td>I am ill, confined to bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cujas, atis, pron., of what country or sect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cujus, a, um, pron., whose, whereof.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culex, icis, 3, m. or f., a gnat, small fly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culpa, æ, 1, f.</td>
<td>a fault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culpo, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I blame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cultura, æ, 1, f.</td>
<td>culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cultus, a, um, part. of colo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cultus, us, 4, m.</td>
<td>culture, tilling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, prep., with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, adv., when.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cumaæ, arum, 1, f.</td>
<td>Cumaæ, a town in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctor, tatus sum, ari, dep., I delay, hesitate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cunctus, a, um, all, the whole.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidissime, adv., most anxiously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidus, inis, 3, f.</td>
<td>desire, anxiety, lust.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupidus, a, um, anxious, desirous.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupio, ivi, itum, 3</td>
<td>I covet, desire much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur, adv., why ?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cura, æ, 1, f.</td>
<td>care, anxiety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curatio, onis, 3, f.</td>
<td>a curing, healing, a charge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cures, ium, 3</td>
<td>a town in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curiatiius, ii, 2, m.</td>
<td>one of the Curiatii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curius, ii, 2, m.</td>
<td>Curius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euro, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I care for, take care of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursus, us, 4, m.</td>
<td>a course, a running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curvus, a, um, crooked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dictionary of Words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuspis, idis, 3, f., the point of a spear, a spear.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custodio, ivi, itum, 4, I guard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custos, odis, 3, m. or f., a guard, a guardian.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutis, is, 3, f., the skin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Dardanius, a, um, Trojan. 
datus, a, um, part. of do. de, prep., of, from. dea, æ, 1, f., a goddess. debitus, ui, itum, 2, I ought, owe. 
decedo, essi, essum, 3, I leave, depart. Decimus, i, 2, m., Decimus. declaro, avi, atum, 1, I declare, make evident, proclaim. decorus, a, um, graceful, becoming, proper. decus, oris, 3, n., beauty, ornament, grace. deditio, onis, 3, f., a surrender. dedo, dedidi, itum, 3, I submit, yield, surrender, give over. deduco, uxi, ctum, 3, I bring, take from, subtract, spin out. deferro, tuli, latum (irreg. compound of fero), I bring, carry off, confer, bestow. deficio, feci, fectum, 3, I fail, leave, revolt, am defective, am discouraged. defingo, xi, ixum, 3, I fix, fasten, thrust into. definio, ivi, itum, 4, I define, determine, limit. defodio, fodi, fossum, 3, I dig, hide in the earth. deformatus, a, um, part., deformed, disgraced, fashioned. deformis, e, deformed, ugly, sorrowful, unsightly. defossus, a, um, part. of defodio. defundo, fudi, fusum, 3, I pour out. defusus, a, um, part. of defundo. 

dego, gi, 3, I lead, spend, live, dwell. degusto, avi, atum, 1, I taste, touch slightly. dein, deinde, advs., afterwards, then. Deiopeia, æ, 1, f., the name of a nymph. 
dejicio, jeci, jectum, 3, I cast down, remove, degrade. delasso, are, 1, I tire out, weary. 
delecto, avi, atum, 1, I please, delight. delictum, i, 2, n., a crime, fault, offence. demens, ntis, foolish, mad, outrageous. dementia, æ, 1, f., foolishness, madness. demitto, misi, missum, 3, I send down, dismiss, humble, submit. demum, adv., at length. denique, adv., in fine, at last. depello, puli, pulsum, 3, I drive away, expel, banish. depono, posui, positum, 3, I put off, lay down, fix, plant. descendo, di, ensum, 3, I descend, fall. describo, ipsi, iptum, 3, I describe, copy. desero, serui, sertum, 3, I forsake, quit, give up. desertus, a, um, part. of desero. desiderium, ii, 2, n., desire, love, want, absence. desidia, æ, 1, f., slothfulness. designatus, a, um, part., appointed (consul designatus, consul elect). despondeo, di, I promise, betroth, despair of. destino, are, I determine, betroth, aim at. desum, fui (compound of sum), I am absent, wanting, fail. desuper, adv., from above, on the top. deterior, us, worse, weaker. devinco, ici, ictum, 2, I overcome, conquer. |
devito, are, 1, I avoid.
devolo, are, 1, I fly down, away, leave.
devotus, a, um, part., devoted, doomed, cursed.
Deus, ei, 2, m., a god, the Deity.
dico, xi, i ctum, 3, I say, declare.
dictator, oris, 3, m., a dictator.
dictito, are, 1, I say often.
dictum, i, 2, n., a word, saying.
dies, ei, 5, m. or f., a day.
differtus, a, um, part., filled, stuffed.
difficilis, e, difficult.
difido, fidi, fidere, 3, I distrust, despair.
diffundo, fusum, 3, I pour out, disperse, publish.
dignitas, tatis, 3, f., dignity, majesty, grandeur.
dignus, a, um, worthy, suitable, becoming.
digredior, gressus sum, gredi, dep., I depart, turn aside.
digressus, us, 4, m., a departure.
dilabor, lapsus sum, labi, dep., I slip aside, waste.
dimico, cavi, care, 1, I fight, engage, struggle.
dimiter, isi, issum, 3, I dismiss, discharge, let go.
dimoveo, movi, motum, 2, I remove, put away.
discedo, essi, essum, 3, I depart, leave, go off.
disco, didicr, cere, 3, I learn, understand.
discordia, æ, 1, f., discord, disagreement.
discrimen, minimis, 3, n., a difference, distinction, danger, a battle.
disjicio, jeci, jectum, 3, I disperse, overthrow.
dispar, paris, unlike.
dispono, posui, positum, 3, I dispose, set in order, settle.
dissimilis, e, unlike, different.
dissipo, are, 1, I dissipate, disperse, scatter, squander.
distineo, nui, tentum, 2, I hinder, keep off.
ditesco, cere, 3, I grow rich.
diu, adv., a long time.
divello, vulsi, vulsum, 3, I tear asunder, loosen.
diversus, a, um, different, contrary, separate.
dives, itis, rich, abounding in.
dives, itis, 3, m. or f., a rich person.
divido, visi, visum, 3, I divide, distribute, distinguish.
divinus, a, um, divine, blessed.
divitie, arum, 1, f., riches, wealth.
divulgo, are, 1, I spread abroad, make known.
divus, i, 2, m., a god.
do, dedi, datum, 1, I give.
doceo, cui, ctum, 2, I teach, inform, tell.
docilis, e, easily taught, docile.
doctor, a, um, part. of doceto.
doleo, lui, litum, 2, I grieve, am displeased.
dolo, are, 1, I beat, belabour.
dolor, oris, 3, m., grief, resentment.
dolus, i, 2, m., deceit, treachery.
dominus, i, 2, m., a master, a ruler, a lord.
domo, mui, mitum, 1, I tame, subdue, conquer.
domus, i and us, 2 and 4, f., a house, a residence.
donec, adv., until, as long as.
dono, avi, atum, 1, I give, bestow.
donum, i, 2, m., a gift, present.
Doricus, a, um, Doric.
dormio, ivi, itum, 4, I sleep.
dorsum, i, 2, n., the back, ridge of a hill.
dubito, avi, atum, 1, I doubt, hesitate.
duco, xi, ctum, 3, I draw, lead, carry, bring.
ducto, avi, atum, 1, I lead.
ductus, a, um, part. of duco.
duleis, e, sweet, agreeable.
dum, adv., until, whilst.
duo, æ, o (see Declension of Adjectives), two.
durus, a, um, hard, difficult, unpleasant.
dux, ucis, 3, m. and f., a leader.

E.
efficio, feci, fectum, 3, I effect, bring about, accomplish.
effugio, ugi, itum, 3, I escape, shun, avoid.
effundo, ugi, itum, 3, I pour out, empty, spread abroad.
egens, part., needy, in want.
egredior, grellus sum, gredi, dep., I step forth, depart, embark.
egregius, a, um, excellent, extraordinary.
ehau, interj., ah! alas!
ejicio, jecii, jectum, 3, I cast forth, eject, drive away.
elatio, onis, 3, f., greatness of soul, sublimity.
elphantus, i, 2, m., an elephant.
elquentia, x, 1, f., eloquence.
emergo, rsi, rsum, 3, I arise, rise from, emerge.
emissus, a, um, part. of emitto.
emitto, isi, issuum, 3, I send forth, discharge, throw away.
emo, emi, emptum, 3, I buy.
emptor, oris, 3, m., a purchaser.
emptus, or entus, part. of emo.
enim, conj., for, indeed.
enuncio, avi, atum, 1, I proclaim, pronounce.
eo, ivi, itum, irreg., I go.
eo, adv., therefore, thither, to that end.
Epirus, i, 2, f., a country of Greece.
epistola, x, 1, f., a letter.
equa, x, 1, f., a mare.
eques, itis, 3, m., a horseman, a knight.
equidem, adv., indeed.
equis, i, 2, m., a horse.
ergo, adv., therefore.
erigo, rexi, rectum, 3, I erect, raise up, promote.
et, conj., and, both.
etenim, conj., for, because.
etiam, conj., also, even, again.
Etruria, x, 1, f., Etruria.
Etruscus, a, um, Etrurian.
Eurus, i, 2, m., the east wind.
evenio, veni, ventum, 4, I come out, happen.
ex, prep., from, out of.
exagito, avi, atum, 1, I harass, disturb, rouse up.
exanimo, avi, atum, 1, I astonish, kill.
excidium, or excsidium, ii, 2, n., destruction, ruin.
excipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, I receive, undertake, except.
exito, avi, atum, 1, I excite, stir up, animate.
exclamo, avi, atum, 1, I exclaim.
exerceo, cui, citum, 2, I exercise, practise.
exercitus, us, 4, m., an army.
exigo, egii, actum, 3, I exact, demand, drive away.
exiguus, a, um, little, scanty.
xistimo, avi, atum, 1, I think, suppose, esteem.
xitus, avi, atum, 1, I expect, hope, look for.
expecto, avi, atum, 1, I expect, hope, look for.
expedio, ivi, itum, 4, I free, deliver, explain.
expeditus, a, um, part. of expedio.
expeditus, a, um. speedy, active.
expello, puli, pulsum, 3, I drive out, expel.
expendo, ndi, nsum, 3, I weigh, examine, value.
experienis, part. of experior.
experimentum, i, 2, n., an experiment, trial.
experior, expertus sum, experiri, dep., I try, experiment.
expers, tis, free from, having no part in.
expleo, plevi, pletum, 2, I fill up, complete.
exploro, ploravi, ploratum, 1, I explore, examine.
expono, osui, ositum, 3, I expose, set forth.
excindo, ere, 3, I cut off.
exsecratio, onis, 3, f., a cursing.
exsecror, atus sum, crari, dep., I curse.
exsequor, cutus sum, sequi, dep., I execute, do, perform.
extemplo, adv., immediately.
exterritus, a, um, part., affrighted.
exterus, a, um, strange, foreign, outward.
extinguo, nxi, nctum, 3, I extinguish, destroy.
extraho, xi, ctum, 3, I extract, pull out, withdraw.
extremus, a, um, extreme, utmost, farthest off.
exuo, ui, utum, 3, I take off, divest of.

F.

Fabius, ii, 2, m., the name of a noble family in Rome.
Fabricius, ii, 2, m., the name of a Roman family.
facies, ei, 5, f., a face, countenance, appearance, show, resemblance, portrait or picture, make, form, fashion, stature, beauty.
facile, adv., easily, readily, without much ado, certainly.
facilis, e, easy, feasible, gentle, mild, pliant, good-natured, easy to be pleased.
facinus, oris, 3, n., a great action, exploit, adventure.
facio, feci, factum, cere, 3, I do, perform, execute, commit.
factum, i, 2, n., a fact, action, deed, feat, transaction.
factus, a, um, part., done, made, formed, framed.
facundia, æ, 1, f., eloquence.
fallo, fefelli, falsum, lere, 3, I deceive, cheat, disappoint, beguile.
fama, æ, 1, f., fame, report, rumour.
fames, is, 3, f., hunger, fasting, famine, dearth, a greedy desire.
familiaris, e, of the same family or household, familiar, usual, friendly.
familiaris, is, 3, m., a servant of the family, an intimate, a friend.
famam, i, 2, n., a temple, a church.
farina, æ, 1, f., meal, flour, powder.
fatum, i, 2, n., fate, God's providence or decree.
Faunus, i, 2, m., Faunus, a god of the country.
faustitas, tatis, 3, f., good luck.
faux, cis, 3, f., the jaw, a strait, narrow passage.
faveo, vi, fautum, 2, I favour, befriend.
flex, icis, happy, fortunate, propitious.
fera, æ, 1, f., a wild beast.
fer, adv., almost, nearly.
feria, æ, 1, f., a holiday.
ferio, percussi, percussum, 4, I strike, smite, sacrifice.
fero, tuli, latum, irr., I bear, carry, report.
ferocia, æ, 1, f., ferocity, cruelty.
ferox, ocis, ferocious, cruel, daring.
ferrum, i, 2, n., iron, a sword.
ferus, a, um, wild, savage.
ferus, i, 2, m., a wild beast.
fessus, a, um, part., wearied.
fidelis, e, faithful.
fideliter, adv., faithfully.
fides, ei, 5, f., faith, honour, truth.
fido, idi, ere, 3, I trust.
fidus, a, um, faithfull.
figo, xi, xum, 3, I fix, shoot, pierce.
filla, æ, 1, f., a daughter.
lius, ii, 2, m., a son.
findo, idi, issum, 3, I cleave, split, divide.
fingo, nxi, iictum, 3, I form, devise, invent.
finis, is, m. or f., 3, an end, limit.
finitermus, a, um, bordering near, adjoining.
fio, factus sum, fieri, irr., I am made, done.
Flaccus, i, 2, m., Flaccus.
flagitium, ii, 2, n., a crime, disgrace.
flagro, avi, are, 1, I burn, am in a passion.
flamma, æ, 1, f., a flame.
flatus, us, 4, m., a blast, breath, gale.
Flavius, ii, 2, m., Flavius.
flebilis, e, mournful, to be lamented.
flebiler, adv., mournfully.
flecto, exi, exum, 3, I bend.
fleo, evi, etum, 2, I weep.
fluctus, us, 4, m., a wave.
fœdus, eris, 3, n., a league.
fœnator, oris, 3, m., an usurer.
fœetus, us, 4, m., the young of any creature, a birth.
forma, æ, 1, f., shape, form, beauty.
formica, æ, 1, f., an ant.
formido, inis, 3, f., fear, dread.
fors, tis, 3, f., fortune, chance.
forsan, forsitan, ] advs., perhaps.
forsit, forte, adv., by chance.
fortis, e, strong, brave.
fortitudo, inis, 3, f., fortitude.
futura, æ, 1, f., fortune.
futunatus, a, um, fortunate.
forum, i, 2, n., the forum, a market-place.
fractus, a, um, part., broken.
frenum, i, 2, n., a bridle, check.
frangendus, a, um, part., to be broken.
frango, frigi, fractum, 3, I break.
frater, tris, 3, m., a brother.
fraus, dis, 3, f., fraud, a cheat.
frigus, oris, 3, n., cold.
frons, tis, 3, f., the front, forehead.
frons, dis, 3, f., the leaf of a tree.
frugi, indecl. adj., careful, thirsty.
frustra, adv., in vain.
fuga, æ, 1, f., flight.
fugio, gi, gitum, 3, I flee, escape.
fulgeo, lsi, lsum, 2, I shine.
fulmineus, a, um, of or belonging to thunder, glittering.
fulmino, avi, are, 1, I thunder.
fultura, æ, 1, f., a prop, support.
Fulvia, æ, 1, f., Fulvia.
fundo, avi, atum, 1, I found, lay a foundation, establish.
fundo, fudi, fusum, 3, I pour out, shed, spill.
funus, eris, 3, n., a funeral, death, corpse.
furiosus, a, um, furious, mad.
furtim, adv., privately, by stealth.
fuscus, a, um, brown, tawny, dark.
fustis, tis, 3, m., a club, staff.
fusus, a, um, part., poured out.
futurus, a, um, part., about to be.

G.

Gabinius, ii, 2, m., Gabinius.
Galli, orum, 2, m., the Gauls.
Gallia, æ, 1, f., Gaul.
Gallicus, a, um, Gallic.
Galli, i, 2, m., a Frenchman, a cock.
garrulus, a, um, prating, talkative.
gaudium, ii, 2, n., joy.
gelidus, a, um, cold.
gemma, æ, f., a gem, jewel.
gen, æ, 1, f., the cheek.
genitor, oris, 3, m., a father, begetter.
genitrix, tricus, 3, f., a mother.
genius, ii, 2, m., a genius, a good or evil demon.
gens, tis, 3, f., a nation, tribe, family.
genus, eris, 3, n., a kind, sort, stock, lineage.
Germania, æ, 1, f., Germany.
gero, ssi, stom, 3, I bear, conduct, wage.
gingiva, æ, 1, f., the gum.
gladius, ii, 2, m., a sword.
glomeratus, a, um, part., wound up like a ball.
glomeru, avi, atum, 1, I wound up, gather in a heap, collect.
gloria, æ, 1, f., glory.
gnatus, i, 2, m., a son.
gracilis, e, slender, slight.
Græci, orum, 2, m., the Greeks.
Græcia. æ, 1, f., Greece.
grandis, e, great, sublimate.
grando, inis, 3, f., hail.
gratia, æ, 1, f., grace, favour, influence.
gratulor, atus sum, ari, dep., I congratulate.
gratus, a, um, grateful, agreeable.
gravis, e, weighty, important.
Grosphus, i, 2, m., Grosphus.
guberno, avi, atum, 1, I govern, steer.
gula, æ, 1, f., the throat.

H.

habeo, ui, itum, 2, I have, esteem, regard, deliver a speech.
habitandus, a, um, part., to be inhabited.
habito, avi, atum, 1, I dwell, inhabit.
heres, edis, 3, m. or f., an heir.
hastile, is, 3, n., a spear.
haud, adv., not.
Heliodorus, i, 2, m., Heliodorus.
herba, æ, 1, f., an herb, grass.
Hercules, is, 3, m., Hercules.
Hesperia, æ, 1, f., Hesperia.
heu, interj., alas!
hic, hæc, hoc, pron., he, this.
hic, adv., here.
hicce, hæce, hocce, pron., this.
hieno, avi, atum, 1, I winter.
Hiempsal, alis, 3, m., Hiempsal.
hiems, is, 3, f., winter.
hinc, adv., hence, from this time.
historia, æ, 1, f., history.
homo, inis, 3, m. or f., a man or woman, a human being.
honestus, a, um, honourable, honest.
honor, oris, 3, m., honour, respect.
hora, æ, 1, f., an hour.
Horatius, ii, 2, m., Horatius.
horrens, tis, rough, horrible.

horreo, ui, ere, 2, I am rough, look horrid, shudder.
horridus, a, um, horrid.
hortus, i, 2, m., a garden.
hospes, itis, 3, m. or f., a guest, a host.
hospitalium, ii, 2, n., hospitality, an inn.
hostilis, e, hostile.
Hostilius, ii, 2, m., Hostilius.
hostis, is, 3, m. or f., an enemy.
huc, adv., thither.
humanitas, tatis, 3, f., humanity, good-nature, politeness.
humanus, a, um, polite, human.
humerus, i, 2, m., the shoulder.
humilis, e, humble, low.
yemalia, ium, 3, n., winter-quarters.

I.

Iberia, æ, 1, f., Spain.
ibi, adv., there.
ico, ci, ctum, 3, I strike.
ictus, a, um, part. of ico.
Idæus, a, um, belonging to Mount Ida, Idaean.
idem, eadem, idem, pron., the same person or thing.
igitur, conj., therefore.
ignarus, a, um, ignorant, unskilful.
ignavus, a, um, indolent, sluggish.
ignis, is, 3, m., fire.
ignoro, avi, atum, 1, I don't know, am ignorant of.
Iliacus, a, um, Trojan.
illabor, psus sum, labi, dep., I slide, fall upon.
ille, a, ud, pron., he, she, that.
ilcebrebra, æ, 1, f., an enticement.
iluc, adv., thither.
illustris, e, illustrious, famous, noble.
imbuo, ui, utum, 3, I imbue, tinge, stain, dye.
imitor, tatus sum, tari, dep., I imitate.
immantitas, tatis, 3, f., cruelty, savageness.
immensus, a, um, immense.
immineo, ui, ere, 2, I hang over,
impend, threaten.
immortalis, e, immortal.
immuto, avi, atum, 1, I change.
imo, adv., yes, nay.
imparatus, a, um, part., unpre-
pared.
impius, a, um, fearless, un-
daunted.
impello, puli; pulsum, 3, I drive,
thrust, persuade.
impedeo, dere, 2, I threaten, 
hang over, on near at hand.
imperator, oris, 3, m., a comman-
der, general, emperor.
imperito, avi, atum, 1, I rule, com-
mand.
imperium, ii, 2, n., military autho-
riety, rule, power.
impero, avi, atum, 1, I command.
impetro, avi, atum, 1, I obtain, 
finish.
impius, a, um, impious, wicked.
impleo, evi, etum, 2, I fill up.
implico, ui and cavi, citum and 
catum, 1, I enfold, entangle, 
attack.
imploro, avi, atum, 1, I implore, 
beseech.
impono, sui, situm, 3, I impose, 
put on.
importunus, a, um, importunate, 
troublesome.
improbos, a, um, dishonest, wicked, 
base.
impusus, us, 4, m., an impulse, 
attack, shock.
in, prep., in, upon, into, towards.
inanis, e, empty, useless, frivo-
Ious.
ciauum, adv., in vain.
incedo, essi, essum, 3, I go, walk, 
enter on.
inceptum, i, 2, n., a beginning, 
undertaking.
icertus, a, um, uncertain, doubt-
ful.
icido, idi, casum, 3, I fall into, 
 happen.
icio, epi, eptum, 3, I begin, un-
dertake, attempt.
icitatus, a, um, part., stirred up, 
incited.
icito, avi, atum, 1, I stir up, 
excite.
iclytus, a, um, famous, excellent, 
renowned.
icolumis, e, safe.
icorruptus, a, um, uncorrupt, 
pure.
icredibilis, e, incredible.
icrepoo, pui and pavi, pitum, 1, I 
make a noise, chide, blame.
icurro, ri, rsum, 3, I run in or 
upon, attack.
icentio, ussi, ssum, 3, I strike, 
smite.
inde, adv., from thence, from that 
time, then.
Indi, orum, 2, m. and f., the In-
dians.
indico, avi, atum, 1, I point out, 
discover.
indico, xi, ctum, 3, I proclaim, 
declare.
indignatio, onis, 3, f., indignation.
induco, xi, ctum, 3, I induce, pre-
vail on, lead into.
indulgeo, lsi, ere, 2, I indulge.
inermis, e, unarmed, defenceless.
inerti, tis, inactive, sluggish, stupid.
infans, tis, infant, young.
infans, tis, 3, m. or f., an infant.
infantia, ae, l, f., infancy.
infero, tuli, illatum, I bring in, 
conclude, apply.
inferus, a, um, low, inferior.
infidelis, e, faithless, unfaithful.
inidus, a, um, faithless, treache-
rous.
inimus, a, um, lowest, contempt-
ible.
ingeniurn, ii, 2, n., nature, dis-
position, capacity.
ingero, ssi, estum, 3, I throw in, 
or upon, heap up.
inimicus, a, um, hostile, unfriendly.
iniquus, a, um, unjust, cruel.
injusta, adv., unjustly.
injustitia, æ, 1, f., injustice.
injustus, a, um, unjust.
innecto, exu and exi, exum, 3, I tie, bind, devise.
inops, is, poor, destitute.
inquam, verb def., I say.
inquietus, a, um, unquiet.
inquo, verb def., I say.
insanus, a, um, insane, mad.
sinsero, sevi, situm, 3, 1 sow in, implant.
isidiae, arum, 1, f., snares, ambush.
isisto, stiti, situm, 3, I insist upon, urge, stand on.
isolens, tis, insolent, unusual, unaccustomed.
ispiro, pexi, pectum, 3, I look upon, look into, observe.
ispiro, avi, atum, 1, 1 breathe into, inspire, animate.
instituo, ui, utum, 3, I institute, appoint, establish.
insto, stiti, situm, 1, I urge, am earnest, threaten.
insulto, avi, atum, 1, I insult, leap upon.
insum, fui, esse, I am in.
intactus, a, um, part., untouched, inviolate.
integer, gra, grum, entire, whole.
integratis, tatis, 3, f., perfectness, integrity.
intellego, exi, ectum, 3, I understand.
intendo, di, nsum and ntum, 3, I intend, hold, design.
inter, prep., between.
interdum, adv., sometimes.
terea, adv., in the meantime.
interficio, eci, ectum, 3, I kill, slay.
introeo, jvi, itum, 4, I enter into.
intus, adv., within.
invado, asi, asum, 3, I invade, enter on, attack.
invenio, ni, ntum, 4, I invent, come into, contrive.
inversus, a, um, part., inverted, turned upside down.
inverto, ti, rsum, 3, I invert.
invictus, a, um, part., unconquered.
invideo, idi, isum, 2, I envy, grudge, refuse.
invidia, æ, 1, f., envy, odium.
invidus, a, um, envious.
invisus, a, um, unseen, odious, hated.
ipse, a, um, pron., him, her, or itself.
iracundus, a, um, passionate.
irasco, atus sum, sci, dep., I am angry with.
irrevocabilis, e, that cannot be recalled.
irriguus, a, um, watered, moist.
is, ea, id, pron., he, she, it.
iste, a, ud, pron., this, that, he, that fellow or thing.
ita, adv., so.
Italia, æ, 1, f., Italy.
Italicus, a, um, Italian.
itaque, adv., therefore.
niter, ineris, 3, n., a journey, road.
iterum, adv., again.
iturus, a, um, part., about to go.

J.

jaceo, ui, ere, 2, I lie, lie down.
jactans, part., tossing, boasting.
jacto, avi, atum, 1, I toss, boast.
jam, adv., now, even.
jandumum, adv., long since.
jamque, adv., and now.
jubo, jussi, jussum, 2, I bid, command, order.
jucundus, a, um, pleasant.
judio, avi, atum, 1, I judge, adjudge, determine.
jugerum, i, 2, n., an acre.
jugulum, i, 2, n., the throat, neck.
Jugurtha, æ, 1, m., Jugurtha.
junco, nxi, ntum, 3, I join, add, annex.
Juno, onis, 3, f., Juno.
Jupiter, Jovis, 3, m., Jupiter.
jus, juris, 3, n., right, justice, law.
jussum, i, 2, n., an order.
justicia, æ, 1, f., justice.
justus, a, um, just, reasonable.
juvenis, e, youthful, young.
juvenis, is, 3, m. or f., a young person.
juventa, æ, 1, f., youth.
juventus, utis, 3, f., youth.
juvo, uvi, utum, 1, I help, assist.

L.
labens, tis, part., falling, sliding.
labor, lapsus sum, labi, dep., I fall, slide, slip.
labor, and labos, oris, 3, m., labour, work, trouble.
laboro, avi, atum, 1, I labour, work.
lacryma, or lachryma, æ, 1, f., a tear.
lætitia, æ, 1, f., joy, gladness.
lætus, a, um, joyful, glad.
Lævinus, i, 2, m., Lævinus.
lævis, e, smooth, polished.
lævus, a, um, left, on the left, foolish.
lana, æ, 1, f., wool.
lapis, idis, 3, m., a stone.
laqueus, i, 2, m., a snare, rope, halter.
Lar, ris, 3, m., a household god.
laxet, e, bp., to bring, bear.
laxus, a, um, part., about to bring, bear.
laudio, avi, atum, I praise, commend.
Laurens, tis, 3, m. or f., a Laurente.
laus, dis, 3, f., praise.
legatus, i, 2, m., an ambassador.
legio, onis, 3, f., a legion.
lego, gi, ctum, 3, I gather, read.
lenio, ivi, itum, 4, I ease, mitigate, appease.
leniter, adv., softly, gently.
Lentulus, i, 2, m., Lentulus.
lethargus, i, 2, m., a lethargy.
lethum, or letum, i, 2, n., death.
leviter, adv., lightly, gently.
levo, avi, atum, 1, I lift up.
lex, gis, 3, f., law.
liber, bera, berum, free.
liberi, 2, m., a book.
libero, avi, atum, 1, I free.
liberta, æ, 1, f., a freedwoman.
libertas, tatis, 3, f., liberty.
libertinus, i, 2, m., a freedman.
libertus, i, 2, m., a freedman.
Libya, æ, 1, f., Africa.
lileo, cui, citum, 2, I am allowed (in 3rd sing., it is lawful).
Licinius, ii, 2, m., Licinius.
ligo, avi, atum, 1, I tie, bind.
lingua, æ, 1, f., a tongue, language.
linter, tris, 3, m., a boat.
liquidus, a, um, liquid.
litera, æ, 1, f., a letter of a book.
literæ, arum, 1, f., an epistle, letters, learning.
lito, avi, atum, 1, I sacrifice.
litus, or littus, oris, 3, n., the shore.
loco, avi, atum, 1, I place, settle.
locus, i, 2, m., a purse, bag, coffe.
locus, i, 2, n. (in plural, loci, and neut., locus), a place, occasion, opportunity.
longe, adv., far off.
longinquus, a, um, remote, far off.
longus, a, um, long.
loquax, acis, talkative.
loquor, cutus sum, loqui, dep., I speak.
lubido, inis, 3, f., pleasure, lust.
Lucilius, ii, 2, m., Lucilius.
Lucius (Bestia), ii, 2, m., Lucius.
lucrum, i, 2, n., gain, profit.
luctus, us, 4, m., grief.
lucus, i, 2, m., a grove.
ludus, i, 2, m., play, a school.
lugubris, e, mournful, sad.
lumbus, i, 2, m., the loin, the reins.
lumen, inis, 3, n., light, brightness.
luna, æ, 1, f., the moon.
lupus, i, 2, m., a wolf.
lux, ucis, 3, f., light.
macer, cra, crum, lean, thin.
madidus, a, um, wet, moist.
magalia, ium, 3, n., cottages, sheds.
magis, adv., more.
magister, tri, 2, m., a master.
magistratus, us, 4, m., a magistracy.
magnifice, adv., magnificently, nobly.
magnus, a, um, large, great.
majestas, atis, 3, f., majesty, dignity.
major, us, greater, elder, important.
majiores, um, 3, m., elders, ancestors.
malesuadus, a, um, persuading ill.
malignus, a, um, malignant, ill-disposed, spiteful.
malitia, æ, 1, f., malice, vice.
malo, lui, malle, irreg., I am more willing, prefer.
malum, i, 2, n., an evil, sin, misfortune.
malus, a, um, bad, evil.
mando, avi, atum, 1, I command, bid, entrust.
mane, adv., in the morning.
maneo, nsi, ere, 2, I remain.
manifestus, a, um, manifest, clear, plain.
Manlius, ii, 2, m., Manlius.
mansuetudo, dinis, 3, f., clemency, gentleness.
manus, us, 4, f., a hand, a band of soldiers.
Marcus, i, 2, m., Marcus.
mare, is, 3, n., the sea.
Marsi, orum, 2, m. or f., the Marsi.
mater, tris, 3, f., a mother.
mature, adv., in time, speedily.
maturus, avi, atum, 1, I ripen, make haste.
maturus, a, um, ripe.
Maximus, i, 2, m., Maximus.
maximus, a, um, greatest.
Medi, orum, 2, m. or f., the Medes.
medicus, i, 2, m., a physician.
meditor, atus sum, tari, dep., I think, meditate, purpose.
medius, a, um, the middle.
melior, us, better.
Melpomene, es (Greek declension), f., Melpomene, one of the Muses.
membrum, i, 2, n., a limb, member.
memor, oris, mindful, grateful.
memoro, avi, atum, 1, I relate, remember.
mens, tis, 3, f., the mind.
menxa, æ, 1, f., a table.
mensis, is, 3, m., a month.
mentior, itus sum,iri, dep., I lie, feign, pretend.
mercator, oris, 3, m., a merchant.
Mercurius, ii, 2, m., Mercury.
mereo, ui, itum, 2, I deserve.
meritum, i, 2, n., merit.
merum, i, 2, n., pure wine.
mellum, i, 2, n., metal.
Metellus, i, 2, m., Metellus.
Metetus, i, 2, m., Metius.
methuo, ui, ere, 3, I fear, dread
metus, us, 4, m., fear, dread.
menus, a, um, pron., mine.
Mezentius, ii, 2, m., Mezentius.
Micipsa, æ, 1, m., Micipsa.
migro, avi, atum, 1, I remove, emigrate.
miles, itis, 3, m., a soldier.
militaris, e, military, warlike.
militia, æ, 1, f., warfare, war.
milito, avi, atum, 1, I wage war.
mille, is, 3, n., a thousand.
minæ, arum, 1, f., threats, battles.
minax, acis, threatening.
Minervæ, æ, 1, f., Minerva.
minimus, a, um, least.
minor, us, less.
minus, adv., less.
miror, atus sum, ari, dep., I wonder at, admire.
misceo, cui, mixtum and mixtum, 2, I mix, mingle.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary of Words.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miser, era, erum, miserable, wretched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserabilis, e, miserable, unhappy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserandus, a, um, to be pitied, worthy of pity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misere, adv., wretchedly, very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misereor, ertus sum, eri, dep., I pity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserio, cere, 3, I pity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miseria, æ, 1, f., misery, wretchedness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missus, a, um, part. of mitto.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitiesco, cere, 3, I grow mild.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitto, isi, issuam, 3, I send.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobilis, e, moveable, fickle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modicus, a, um, moderate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modo, adv., just now, only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus, i, 2, m., a manner, measure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mœæ, ium, 3, n., walls, fortifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moles, is, 3, f., a mass, any thing huge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molior, itus sum, iri, dep., I undertake, attempt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molliter, adv., softly, tenderly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>momentum, i, 2, n., a moment, weight, force.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneo, ui, itum, 2, I advise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitor, oris, 3, m. or f., an adviser.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus, a, um, part. of moneo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mons, tis, 3, m., a mountain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monstrum, i, 2, n., a monster, wonder, prodigy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mora, æ, 1, f., delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morbus, i, 2, m., disease, sickness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior, mortuus sum, moriri, dep., I die.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moror, atus sum, ari, dep., I delay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mors, tis, 3, f., death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortuus, a, um, dead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mos, oris, 3, m., a custom, morals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motus, a, um, part. of moveo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motus, us, 4, m., motion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moveo, ovi, otum, 2, I move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mox, adv., by and by, shortly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mula, æ, 1, f., a she-mule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multitudo, inis, 3, f., a multitude.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multo, adv., by much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum, adv., much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, a, um, much, many.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundus, a, um, clean, neat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundus, i, 2, m., the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munificentia, æ, 1, f., generosity, munificence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munio, ivi, itum, 4, I fortify.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>munus, eris, 3, n., a gift, present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murus, i, 2, m., a wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutatio, onis, 3, f., a change.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.|
| Næ, adv., yes, indeed, verily. |
| nam, conj., for, because. |
| namque, conj., for. |
| narro, avi, atum, 1, I tell, relate. |
| nascens, tis, part. of nascor. |
| nascor, natus sum, nasci, dep., I am born, arise, begin. |
| nasus, i, 2, m., the nose. |
| nata, æ, 1, f., a daughter. |
| natura, æ, 1, f., nature. |
| natus, a, um, part. of nascor. |
| natus, i, 2, m., a son. |
| navis, is, 3, f., a ship. |
| navita, æ, 1, m., a sailor. |
| nauta, æ, 1, m., a sailor. |
| ne, adv. and conj., not, lest, whether. |
| nec, conj., neither, nor. |
| necatus, a, um, part., killed. |
| necessitudo, inis, 3, f., necessity, friendship. |
| nefas, indecl., n., wickedness, impiety. |
| neglego, exi, ectum, 3, I neglect. |
| negotior, atus sum, ari, dep., I transact business. |
| negotium, ii, 2, n., business. |
| nemo, inis, 3, m. and f., nobody. |
| nempe, adv., namely. |
| nepos, otis, 3, m., a grandson. |
| Nepetunus, i, 2, m., Neptune. |
| nequam, indecl. adj., wicked, worthless. |
| neque, conj., neither, nor. |
nequeo, ivi, itum, 4, I cannot.
nequickam, adv., in vain.
Nereus, i, 2, m., Nereus.
nervus, i, 2, m., nerve, a cord.
nescio, ivi, itum, 4, I am ignorant, don't know.
neuter, tra, trum, neither.
ni, conj., unless.
nidor, oris, 3, m., a scent, a strong smell.
nihil, indecl., n., nothing.
nihilominus, adv., notwithstanding.
nihilum, i, 2, n., nothing.
nil, for nihil, indecl.
nimbus, i, 2, m., a cloud.
nimis, adv., too much.
nimum, indecl., adv., too much.
nisi, conj., if not, unless.
niteo, tui, ere, 2, I shine.
nitor, nixus and nisus sum, ti, dep., I endeavour, labour.
nitor, oris, 3, m., neatness, brightness.
nobilis, e, noble.
nobilis, is, 3, m., a nobleman.
noceo, ui, citum, 2, I hurt.
nolo, nolui, nolle, irr., I am unwilling.
nomen, inis, 3, n., a name, title.
Nomentanus, i, 2, m., Nomentanus.
nomino, avi, atum, 1, I name, nominate.
on, adv., not.
onnullus, a, um, some.
onus, a, um, ninth.
osco, ovi, otum, 3, I know.
noster, tra, trum, ours, our.
nostras, tis, of our own country, sect, party.
Notus, i, 2, m., the south-wind.
notus, a, um, part., well known.
noven, indecl., nine.
novendialis, e, of nine days' continuance.
novo, avi, atum, 1, I renew, I make new.
novus, a, um, new, late.
nox, ctis, 3, f., night.
nubes, is, 3, f., a cloud.
nudus, a, um, naked.
nuge, arum, 1, f., trifles.
nullus, a, um, none.
num, adv., whether.
Numa, æ, 1, m., Numa.
Numantinus, a, um, Numantine.
umen, inis, 3, n., the deity, will, decree.
umero, avi, atum, 1, I number, reckon.
umerus, i, 2, m., a number.
Numidae, arum, 1, m. and f., the Numidians.
Numidia, æ, 1, f., Numidia.
ummus, i, 2, m., money.
nunc, adv., now.
nuncio, avi, atum, 1, I announce, tell.
nuncius, ii, 2, m., a messenger.
nunquam, adv., never.
nutrio, ivi, itum, 4, I nourish.
nymph, æ, 1, f., a nymph.

O.

O! and oh! interjs., oh!
ob, prep., for, on account of, in the way of.
obo, ivi, itum, 4, I go, go through, undertake.
objicio, jeici, jectum, 3, I object, throw in the way of.
obiratus, part., incensed with.
oblivio, onis, 3, f., forgetfulness.
oboixius, a, um, obnoxious, liable to, subject to.
obsidio, onis, 3, f., a siege, blockade.
obsto, stiti, stittum and statum, 1, I stand in the way of, I oppose.
objius, a, um, hindering, opposite to, hostile.
occedo, idi, isum, 3, I kill, slay, put to death.
occulite, adv., secretly.
occupo, avi, atum, 1, I occupy, take beforehand, anticipate.
occurrro, ri, rsum, 3, I occur, meet, run in the way of.
oceanus, i, 2, m., the ocean.
ocior, us, swifter.
Octavius, ii, 2, m., Octavius.
octussis, is, m., eight asses in money.
occulus, i, 2, m., the eye.
ocyor, us, same as ocior.
o, def. verb, I hate.
odium, ii, 2, n., hatred.
odor, oris, 3, m., odour, a smell.
ofero, obtuli, oblatum, irr., I offer, present.
officium, ii, 2, n., office, business, employment.
oh! ohe! interjs., oh! enough!
olim, adv., in time past, long ago, in time to come.
omen, inis, 3, n., an omen, sign.
omitto, isi, issum, 3, I omit, give up.
omino, adv., in all, entirely, altogether.
omnis, e, all.
onus, eris, 3, n., a burthen, load.
opacus, a, um, shady, dark, gloomy.
 OPERA, æ, 1, f., work, labour.
Opimius, ii, 2, m., Opimius.
opreto, ere, 2, I behave.
oppeto, tivi and tii, titum, 3, I undergo, die in battle.
opportunus, a, um, seasonable, favourable.
oprimo, essi, essum, 3, I oppress, overpower, overwhelm.
oppugnatio, onis, 3, f., an assault, siege.
oppugno, avi, atum, 1, I attack, assault.
ops, opis, 3, f., assistance, wealth, resources.
opimus, a, um, best.
opto, avi, atum, 1, I wish.
opulentus, a, um, wealthy.
opus, eris, 3, n., work, labour.
opus, indecl., need.
orandus, a, um, to be prayed for.
oratio, onis, 3, f., an oration, speech.
orbis, is, 3, m., an orb, circle, the world.
Orcus, i, 2, m., Pluto, the grave, hell.
ordo, inis, 3, m., order, regularity.
orior, ortus sum, oriri, dep., I arise, begin.
or, avi, atum, 1, I beg, entreat.
Orpheus, i, 2, m., Orpheus.
ortus, a, um, part., risen.
ortus, us, 4, m., a rising.
orzya, æ, 1, f., rice.
ors, oris, 3, n., the mouth, face.
ors, ossis, 3, n., a bone.
ostendo, di, nsum, 3, I show, display.
ostium, ii, 2, n., a door, entrance, the mouth of a river.
otium, ii, 2, n., leisure, ease.
ovans, tis, part., triumphing.
ovis, is, 3, f., a sheep.

P.
pacatus, a, um, part., reduced to peace, pacified.
Pachynus, i, 2, m., a promontory of Sicily.
paco, avi, atum, 1, I reduce to peace, pacify.
pactio, onis, 3, f., a covenant, agreement.
pactum, i, 2, n., a covenant, manner.
palam, adv., openly.
Palinurus, i, 2, m., Palinurus.
pallens, tis, part., pale, being pale, causing paleness.
pallidus, a, um, pale.
palpor, atus sum, ari, dep., I stroke gently, soothe, flatter.
paludamentum, i, 2, n., a military cloak.
paluster, tris, e, marshy.
pando, di, nsum and ssum, 3, I open, spread, display.
Pantolabus, i, 2, m., Pantolabus.
pars, is, equal.
paratus, a, um, part., prepared.
pares, tis, m. and f., a parent.
pares, tis, part., obeying.
pareo, ui, itum, 2, I appear, obey.
paries, tis, 3, m., a wall.
pariter, adv., equally.
paro, avii, atum, 1, *I prepare.*
paropsis, idis, 3, *a dish.*
pars, tis, 3, *a part.*
Parthus, i, 2, m., *a Parthian.*
partim, adv., *partly, in part.*
parturio, ivi, itum, 4, *I bring forth in childbirth.*
partus, us, 4, m., *a birth, offspring.*
pastus, a, um, *brought forth.*
patens, tis, part., *lying open.*
pater, tris, 3, m., *a father, a senator.*
patera, æ, 1, f., *a goblet.*
patiens, tis, part., *suffering, able to endure.*
patria, æ, 1, f., *one’s country.*
patrictius, ii, 2, m., *a patrician.*
patricius, a, um, *patrician.*
patrimonium, ii, 2, n., *patrimony, the paternal estate.*
patrius, a, um, *paternal, belonging to a father or to one’s country.*
patro, avi, atum, 1, *I commit, effect.*
patulus, a, um, *open, wide.*
pauci, æ, a, *few.*
paucitas, tatis, 3, f., *frowness, a few people.*
paulatim, adv., *by degrees.*
paulo, adv., *by a little.*
paululum or paullulum, adv., *a little.*
pauper, ris, *poor, a poor person.*
pauperies, ei, 5, f., *poverty.*
paupertas, tis, 3, f., *poverty.*
paveo, vi, vere, 2, *I fear, dread.*
pax, cis, 3, f., *peace.*
peccatum, i, 2, n., *sin, a crime.*
pectus, oris, 3, n., *the breast.*
pescunia, æ, 1, f., *money.*
pedes, itis, 3, m., *a foot-soldier.*
pelagus, i, 2, n., *the sea.*
pellis, is, 3, f., *the skin, the hide of a beast.*
pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3, *I drive, drive away.*
pendens, tis, part., *hanging, depending.*
pendeo, pependi, ere, 2, *I hang, depend.*
penna, æ, 1, f., *a feather, quill.*
per, prep., *through, by means of.*
perambulo, avi, atum, 1, *I walk, travel over.*
percontator, oris, 3, m., *an asker, a busybody.*
percuncitor, atus sum, ari, dep., *I ask, inquire.*
perdo, idi, itum, 3, *I lose, spend, destroy.*
perduco, xi, ctum, 3, *I carry, bring, lead through.*
pereo, ivi, itum, 4, *I perish.*
perfero, tuli, latum, irr., *I carry, endure.*
Pergamus, i, 2, f. (in pl. Pergama, orum, 2, n.), *Pergamus, Troy.*
periculum, or periculum, i, 2, n., *danger, hazard.*
periculosus, a, um, *dangerous.*
peritus, a, um, *skilful, experienced.*
permisceo, cui, istum and ixtum, 2, *I mix, mingle, disorder.*
permitstus, or permixstus, part., *mized, &c.*
permitto, isi, issum, 3, *I allow, permit.*
permotus, a, um, part., *greatly moved, affected.*
permoveo, ovi, otum, 2, *I move greatly, affect.*
perpello, puli, pulsum, 3, *I force, persuade.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual, everlasting.*
perrumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3, *I break through by force.*
persequor, quatus sum, sequi, dep., *I pursue, follow up, execute, perform.*
persuadeo, asi, dere, 2, *I persuade.*
perterreo, rui, ritum, 2, I frighten.
perterratus, a, um, part., frightened.
perturbatus, a, um, part., disturbed, troubled.
pes, pedis, 3, m., a foot.
pestilentia, æ, 1, f., pestilence.
petitio, onis, 3, f., a petition, request.
peto, ivi, itum, 3, I ask, seek.
Petrus, ii, 2, m., Petrus.
pharetra, æ, 1, f., a quiver.
Phocæi, orum, 2, m. and f., the Phocæans.

Piger, ra, rum, slow, sluggish, inactive.
pigritia, æ, 1, f., slothfulness.
plum, i, 2, n., a javelin.
pius, a, um, devout, religious, dutiful, good-natured.
placeo, ui, itum, 2, I please.
placidus, a, um, calm, mild, placid.
plebs, is, 3, f., the common people.
plenus, a, um, full.
plerique, plerœque, plerque, adj. pl., the most, the greatest part.
Plotius, ii, 2, m., Plotius.
pluma, æ, 1, f., a feather.
plurimus, a, um, very much, very many.
plus, adv., more.
poena, æ, 1, f., punishment.
polliceor, itus sum, ceri, dep., I promise.
pollicitatio, onis, 3, f., a promise.
pollicitus, a, um, part., having promised.
Pompeius, ii, 2, m., Pompey.
Pomplius, ii, 2, m., Pompilio.
poundus, eris, 3, n., weight.
ponendus, a, um, part., to be placed, rejected.
pono, sui, situm, 3, I place, lay, lay aside.
popularis, e, popular.
popularis, is, 3, m. and f., an accomplice.
populus, i, 2, f., a poplar tree.
populus, i, 2, m., the people.

Porcius, ii, 2, m., Porcius.
Porsena, or Porsenna, æ, 1, m., Porsena.
porta, æ, 1, f., a gate, door.
portendo, di, ntum, 3, I portend, betoken.
porto, avi, atum, 1, I carry.
posco, poposci, cere, 3, I ask, demand.
positivus, a, um, part., placed.
possideo, sedi, sessum, 2, I possess.
possum, potui, posse, irr., I am able.
post, prep., after, behind.
postea, adv., afterwards.
posterus, a, um, the next.
postquam, adv., after that, since.
postremo, adv., finally, at last.
postremus, a, um, the last.
postulo, avi, atum, 1, I entreat, beseech.
potens, tis, part., powerful, able.
potentia, æ, 1, f., power.
potior, itus sum, iri, dep., I possess, enjoy, get possession of.
potior, oris, better, preferable.
praep., prep., before, in comparison of, exceedingly.
prædeo, ui, ere, 2, I afford.
praecptum, i, 2, n., an order.
praecinctus, a, um, girded, equipped.

præcipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, I prevent, instruct, command.
præclarus, a, um, illustrious, very bright, famous.
præda, æ, 1, f., plunder.
praedium, ii, 2, n., a battle.
præmium, ii, 2, n., a reward.
præscribo, psi, ptum, 3, I prescribe, order, appoint.
præsens, tis, present, immediate.
præsens, tis, present, immediate.
præsertia, adv., especially.
præsidium, ii, 2, n., a safeguard, protection, a garrison.
præsto, stiti, situm and statum, 1, I stand before, excel.
præter, prep., besides, over and above, ex:cept.

præterea, adv., besides.
prætor, oris, 3, m., a prætor, governor.

prætorius, a, um, belonging to a general.

prævus, a, um, wicked, depraved.

præcìs, ci, cem, prece ; pl., preces, precum, precibus, 3, f., a prayer, entreaty.

prehendo, di, nsum, 3, I grasp, seize.

proendo, di, nsum, 3, I grasp, seize.

prænus, a, um, part., grasped.

pretium, ii, 2, n., price, reward.

Priamus, i, 2, m., Priam.

primum, adv., in the first place, especially.

primus, a, um, the first, especial.

princeps, ipis, chief.

princeps, ipis, 3, m., a chief.

principium, ii, 2, n., a beginning.

prior, us, oris, former, better.

pristinus, a, um, ancient, former.

prius, adv., before, sooner.

priusquam, adv., before that.

privatim, adv., privately.

privus, a, um, particular, what is one's own.

pro, prep., for, on account of.

probec, adv., well.

procedo, ssi, ssum, 3, I proceed, advance.

proclivis, e, down hill, steep, inclined to.

procul, adv., far, far off.

prodigium, ii, 2, n., a prodigy, wonder.

prodigus, a, um, lascivious, prodigal.

prodo, didi, ditum, 3, I betray, deliver.

produco, xi, ctum, 3, I produce, bring, draw, lead.

profariis (no 1st person), fatur, fari, dep., thou speakest.

proficiscor,fectus sum, cisci, dep., I go, depart.

profugio, ugi, gitum, 3, I flee, escape.

prògnatus, a, um, part., born, begotten.

prohibeo, ui, itum, 2, I prohibit, hinder.

proles, is, 3, f., offspring.

promitto, isi, issum, 3, I promise.

pronus, a, um, prone, inclined to.

prope, prep., near to.

properde, adv., speedily.

propinquus, a, um, near to, neighbouring, related to.

propior, us, oris, nearer.

propositum, i, 2, n., a purpose, design.

pròprios, a, um, proper, fit, peculiar to an individual.

propter, prep., for, on account of.

propugno, avi, atum, 1, I fight.

prorepo, epsi, eptum, 3, I creep along.

prosequor, cutus sum, qui, dep., I pursue, worship.

prosilio, lui and livi, sultum, 4, I heap.

prospere, adv., prosperously.

prospicere, exi, ectum, 3, I foresee, behold.

prospicio, exi, ectum, 3, I foresee, behold.

prosterno, stravi, stratum, 3, I overthrow, strew.

protervus, a, um, saucy, wanton.

protinus, or protenus, adv., immediately, forthwith.

provideo, idi, isum, 2, I foresee, provide.

provincia, æ, 1, f., a province, office.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next.

prudens, tis, prudent, skilful.

prudentia, æ, 1, f., prudence.

ptisanarium, ii, 2, n., rice-milk.

pubes, is, 3, f., the middle, the waist, youth.

publice, adv., publicly, at the public expense.

publicus, a, um, public, common.

Publius, ii, 2, m., Publius.

pudor, oris, 3, m., bashfulness, modesty, shame.

puer, ri, 2, m., a boy, child.

pugna, æ, 1, f., a fight, battle.

pugno, avi, atum, 1, I fight.

pulcher, ra, rum, fair, beautiful, honourable.

pulmentarium, ii, 2, n., pottage, gruel, delicacies.
pulso, avi, atum, 1, I beat, knock at.
Punicus, a, um, Punic, Carthaginian.
purgo, avi, atum, 1, I purge, cleanse, excuse, expiate.
purpura, æ, 1, f., purple.
purpureus, a, um, purple.
purgo, avi, atum, 1, I think.
Pyrgalio, onis, 3, m., Pyrgalio.
Pyrrhus, i, 2, m., Pyrrhus.

Q.
Qua, adv., where, by which means.
quero, æsivi, æsitum, 3, I ask, seek, look for.
quiesitus, a, um, part., sought for.
queso, verb def., I beseech, pray.
questio, onis, 3, f., a question, debate, inquiry.
qualis, e, such, of what manner.
quam, adv., how, than.
quamvis, conj., although.
quando, adv., when, since.
quandoque, adv., one time or other, whenever.
quauque, or quamquam, conj., although.
quanto, adv., by how much.
quantum, adv., as much as.
quantus, a, um, how great, how many.
quaprop<e>ter, adv., wherefore, why?
quare, adv., wherefore, why?
quasi, adv., as if, as it were.
quassatus, a, um, part., shaken.
quatio, assi, assum, 3, I shake.
que, conj., and, both.
quo, ivi, itum, 4, I am able, I can.
qurela, æ, 1, f., a complaint.
quero, questus sum, queri, dep., I complain.
quæ, quæ, quod, pron., which, that, what, who.
quæ, conj., because.
quicunque, quæcunque, quod-
cunque, pron., whosoever, whatsoever.
quid, neut., used as a noun, what?
quidam, quædam, quoddam and quiddam, pron., one, some one, such a one.
quidem, adv., indeed.
quies, etis, 3, f., rest, ease.
quiesco, evi, etum, 3, I rest.
quieten, a, um, quiet, calm.
quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, pron., any one, as much as you like.
Quinctilius, ii, 2, m., Quinctilius.
quinquaginta, indecl., fifty.
quinquiesius, a, um, the fifth.
Quirinus, i, 2, m., Romulus.
Quiris, itis, 3, m. or f., a Roman.
quis, quæ, quid or quod, pron., who? which? what kind?
quiasquam, quæquam, quidquam or quiaquam, pron., any one, any thing.
quia, quæque, quodque, pron., every man, every thing, whosoever.
quiais, m. and f., pron., whosoever, whoever.
quavis, quavis, quidvis or quodvis, pron., whosoever, any one.
quo, adv., whether? on which account, wherefore.
quocircum, conj., wherefore.
quocunque, adv., whithersoever.
quod, conj., that, because.
quondam, adv., in time past, formerly, sometimes.
quoniam, conj., since, because.
quoque, conj., also.
quot, indecl., how many? so many as.
quotidianus, a, um, daily, common.
quum, conj., since, whereas.

R.
Rana, æ, 1, f., a frog.
rapi, acis, rapacious, ravenous.
rapiro, ui, ptum, 3, I snatch, take by force.
ratio, onis, 3, f., reason, cause, means.
ratis, is, 3, f., a ship.
ratus, a, um, part., supposing, thinking.
recalctior, avi, atum, 1, I kick.
recendo, ssi, ssum, 3, I recede, withdraw, depart.
recens, tis, fresh, late.
recipio, cepi, ceptum, 3, I receive, take back, recover.
recito, avi, atum, 1, I recite, repeat, read over.
reconcilio, avi, atum, 1, I reconcile, recover.
rectum, i, 2, n., a right line, right, virtue.
rectus, a, um, straight, upright.
reddo, didi, ditum, 3, I restore, give back, afford.
redeo, ivi, itum, 4, I return.
reditus, us, 4, m., a return.
reduco, xi, etum, 3, I bring back, restore.
reperio, avi, atum, 1, I receive, take back, recover.
recte, adv., rightly, properly.
res, ei, 5, f., a thing, matter, concern.
resisto, stiti, stimum, 3, I resist, halt.
respicio, exi, ectum, 3, I look back on, regard.
respondeo, ndi, nsum, 2, I answer.
respublica, reipublica, 1 and 5, f., the state, commonwealth.
resto, stiti, stimum, 1, I stay, remain, stand forth.
retinaculum, i, 2, n., a string, cable, halter.
retineo, nui, entum, 2, I hold, keep back, restrain.
revertor, rsus sum, rti, dep., I return.
revoco, avi, atum, 1, I call back, revoke.
rex, egis, 3, m., a king.
rhetor, oris, 3, m., a rhetorician.
ritus, us, 4, m., a rite, ceremony.
robustus, a, um, robust, strong.
rudo, osi, osum, 3, I gnaw, wear away.
rogatio, onis, 3, f., a question, request.
rogo, avi, atum, 1, I ask, desire.
rogus, i, 2, m., a funeral pile.
Roma, æ, 1, f., Rome.
Romanus, a, um, Roman.
Romanus, i, 2, m., a Roman.
Romulus, i, 2, m., Romulus.
Romulus, a, um, Roman.
ruens, tis, part., rushing, falling to decay.
Rufus, i, 2, m., Rufus.
ruga, æ, 1, f., a wrinkle.
ruina, æ, 1, f., ruin, destruction.
ruo, ui, itum and utum, 3, I rush, fall down.
rursus, adv., again.
Rutilius, ii, 2, m., Rutilius.
Rutuli, orum, 2, m. and f., the Rutuli.

S.
Sabini, orum, 2, m. and f., the Sabines.
Sabinus, a, um, Sabine.
saccus, i, 2, m., a sack, bag.
sacer, cra, crum, sacred, devoted, cursed.
sacrum, i, 2, n., a sacrifice.
sæpe, adv., often.
sæpenúmero, adv., oftentimes, many a time.
sævitia, æ, 1, f., cruelty, harshness.
sævus, a, um, cruel.
sagitta, æ, 1, f., an arrow.
sal, is, 3, m., salt, the sea.
salignus, a, um, of willow.
saltus, us, 4, m., a forest, grove.
saluber, bris, e, healthy, wholesome.
salus, utis, 3, f., health, safety.
sanctus, a, um, holy, pious.
sanguis, inis, 3, m., blood.
sanus, a, um, sane, healthful.
sapiens, tis, 3, m. and f., a wise person.
sapiens, tis, wise.
Sardanapalus, i, 2, m., Sardanapalus.
satelles, itis, 3, m., a body-guard.
satira, æ, 1, f., a satire.
satis, adv., enough.
Satureianus, a, um, Satureian.
saucius, a, um, wounded.
sandro, di, nsum, 3, I climb, ascend.
sceius, eris, 3, n., wickedness.
sceptrum, i, 2, n., a sceptre.
sceientia, æ, 1, f., science, skill, knowledge.
sceindo, scidi, issum, 3, I cut, cleave, rend.

sci, ivi, itum, 4, I know.
Scipiaæ, æ, 1, m., Scipio.
Scipio, onis, 3, m., Scipio.
scopulus, i, 2, m., a rock.
scribo, ipsi, iptum, 3, I write, compose a book.
sculpo, psi, ptum, 3, I carve, engrave.
scurræ, æ, 1, m., a scoffer, a buffoon.
Scythes, is, 3, m. or f., a Scythian.
secerno, cri, cretum, 3, I separate, distinguish.
secu, cui, ctum and catum, 1, I cut.
secundus, a, um, second, prosperous, propitious.
sed, conj., but.
cedes, is, 3, f., a seat.
dedile, is, 3, n., a seat.
semel, adv., once.
semita, æ, 1, f., a footpath, path.
semper, adv., always.
Sempronia, æ, 1, f., Sempronia.
senator, oris, 3, m., a senator.
ensatus, us, 4, m., the senate.
secunctus, utis, 3, f., old age.
senex, is, old.
sex, is, 3, m. and f., an old person.
serpentia, æ, 1, f., a sentence, opinion, decree, purpose.
sentio, nisi, nsum, 4, I am sensible of, I think, feel.
septem, indecl., seven.
sequor, cutus sum, sequi, dep., I follow.
sermo, onis, 3, m., speech, a discourse, language.
serva, æ, 1, f., a female slave.
servio, ivi, itum, 4, I serve as a slave.
servo, avi, atum, 1, I keep, preserve.
servus, i, 2, m., a slave, a servant.
seu, conj., either, or.
severitas, tatis, 3, f., severity, sharpness.
si, conj., if, since.
Sibylla, æ, 1, f., the Sibyl.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sic, adv.</td>
<td>so, thus.</td>
<td>solicit, sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicicus, a</td>
<td>a, um, dry, sober, fasting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siculi, orum</td>
<td>2, m. and f., the Sicilians.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siculus, a</td>
<td>um, Sicilian.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sicuti, adv.</td>
<td>just as if.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidonius, a</td>
<td>um, Sidonian.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidus, eris</td>
<td>3, n., a star.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signum, i</td>
<td>2, n., a sign, token.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silentium, ii</td>
<td>2, n., silence.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silva, æ</td>
<td>1, f., a wood.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simia, æ</td>
<td>1, f., an ape.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, e</td>
<td>like, similar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simul, adv.</td>
<td>together, at the same time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin, but if</td>
<td>if not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine, prep.</td>
<td>without.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singultum, adv.</td>
<td>with sobs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sino, sivi</td>
<td>situm, 3, I suffer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sive, conj.</td>
<td>whether, if, or if.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socia, æ</td>
<td>1, f., a companion, a female partner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>societas, tatis</td>
<td>3, f., society, company.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socius, a</td>
<td>um, social, belonging to allies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socius, ii</td>
<td>2, m., an ally, confederate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sol, lis</td>
<td>3, m., the sun.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solemnis, or solennis</td>
<td>e, solemn, annual, usual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soleo, ui and solitus sum, ere</td>
<td>I am accustomed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solidus, a</td>
<td>um, solid, the whole.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sollicito, or soliciot, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I soliciit, importune, urge, press.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solum, i</td>
<td>2, n., the soil, ground, a floor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solus, a</td>
<td>um, alone, only.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solvo, vi</td>
<td>lutum, 3, I loosen, disengage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somnus, i</td>
<td>2, m., sleep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonans, tis</td>
<td>part., sounding, resounding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sono, nui, itum</td>
<td>1, I sound, resound.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sopor, oris</td>
<td>3, m., sleep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soror, oris</td>
<td>3, f., a sister.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sors, tis</td>
<td>3, f., a lot, chance, fortune.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sortior, titus sum, iri, dep., I cast, draw lots for, share.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spartacus, i</td>
<td>2, m., Spartacus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spatum, ii</td>
<td>2, n., space, extent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spelunca, æ</td>
<td>1, f., a cave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sperno, previ, pretum, 3</td>
<td>I despise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spero, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I hope.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spes, ei, 5, f., hope, expectation.</td>
<td>spiritus, us, 4, m., spirit, breath, the mind, the soul.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spiro, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I breathe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spolio, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I spoil, rob.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoliium, ii</td>
<td>2, n., spoil.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sponsus, i</td>
<td>2, m., a bridegroom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stabilis, e</td>
<td>firm, durable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statim, adv.</td>
<td>still.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statuo, ui</td>
<td>utum, 3, I set, place, appoint.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status, us</td>
<td>4, m., a state, condition, position.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sterto, tui, tere</td>
<td>3, I snore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stoici, orum</td>
<td>2, m., the Stoics.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoicus, a</td>
<td>um, stoical.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stomachus, i</td>
<td>2, m., the stomach.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stratus, a</td>
<td>um, part., spread, laid down, prostrate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strenuus, a</td>
<td>um, active, bold, resolute.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strepitus, us</td>
<td>4, m., a noise, sound.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stulte, adv.</td>
<td>foolishly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stultus, a</td>
<td>um, foolish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suavis</td>
<td>e, sweet, pleasant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suaviter, adv.</td>
<td>sweetly, agreeably.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub, prep.</td>
<td>under, up to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subeo, ivi</td>
<td>itum, irr., I go under, undertake.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subigo, egi, actum, I bring under, subdue, compel.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subvenio, vem, ventum, 4</td>
<td>I help, relieve, succour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subverta, ti, sum, 3</td>
<td>I subvert, turn upside down.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subpoena, volutum, ere, 3</td>
<td>I roll up.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succedo, essi, essum, 3</td>
<td>I succeed, approach to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succurro, ri, rsum, 3</td>
<td>I succour, help.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sudo, avi, atum, 1</td>
<td>I perspire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sui, pron</td>
<td>sing. and pl., he, she, itself, they.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Translation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulcus, i, 2, m., <em>a furrow</em>, trench.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum, fui, esse, <em>I am</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summus, a, um, <em>highest</em>, greatest.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumo, mpsi, ptum, 3, <em>I take</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super, prep., <em>upon</em>, beyond, above.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superatus, a, um, part., overcome.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superbia, æ, 1, f., <em>pride</em>, <em>insolence</em>, arrogance.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superne, adv., <em>from above</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supero, avi, atum, 1, <em>I conquer</em>, <em>surrmount</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superstition, onis, 3, f., <em>superstition</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superstito, avi, atum, 1, <em>I survive</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, a, um, <em>above</em>, upper.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplex, icis, <em>suppliant</em>, humble.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplicium, ii, 2, n., <em>supplication</em>, prayer, punishment.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supra, prep., <em>above</em>, beyond.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surgo, rrexi, rrectum, 3, <em>I rise</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sustineo, nui, ntum, 2, <em>I hold up</em>, sustain, support.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suus, a, um, <em>his</em>, <em>hers</em>, its.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sylva, or silica, æ, 1, f., <em>a wood</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syphax, acis, 3, m., Syphax.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syritis, is, 3, f., <em>a whirlpool</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegula, æ, 1, f., <em>a tile</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tellus, uris, 3, f., <em>the earth</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telum, i, 2, n., <em>a weapon</em>, dart.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temere, adv., <em>rashly</em>, <em>at random</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempestas, tatis, 3, f., <em>a tempest</em>, time, storm.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus, i, 2, n., <em>time</em>, opportunity.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenax, acis, tenacious, holding fast.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tendo, tetendi, nsum and ntum, 3, <em>I stretch</em>, hold, extend.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tener, era, erum, tender.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tentandus, a, um, part., to be tried, attempted.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tento, avi, atum, 1, <em>I try</em>, attempt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenuis, e, <em>small</em>, <em>thin</em>, slender.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ter, adv., <em>thrice</em>, <em>three times</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terra, æ, 1, f., <em>the earth</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terribilis, e, <em>terrible</em>, dreadful.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terror, oris, 3, m., <em>terror</em>, <em>dread</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testa, æ, 1, f., <em>an earthen pot</em>, jar.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testamentum, i, 2, n., <em>a testament</em>, <em>a will</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testimonium, ii, 2, n., <em>testimony</em>, a proof.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testis, is, 3, m. and f., <em>a witness</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testor, atus sum, ari, dep., <em>I bear witness</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teter, ra, rum, horrible, foul, hideous.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teucr, orum, 2, m. and f., <em>the Trojans</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thalamus, i, 2, m., <em>a bedchamber</em>, marriage.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrace, es, f. (Greek declension), Thrace.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeo, ui, ere, 2, <em>I fear</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timidus, a, um, fearful, anxious.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timor, oris, 3, m., fear.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tithonius, ii, 2, m., Tithonius.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolero, avi, atum, 1, <em>I support</em>, tolerate, endure.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, <em>I take</em>, lift up.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tot, indecl., so many.
totus, a, um, the whole.
tractabilis, e, tractable, gentle.
trado, didi, ditum, 3, I deliver,
hand over.
tranquilus, a, um, tranquil, quiet.
trans, prep., beyond, over.
transno, avi, atum, 1, I swim
over.
Trebatius, ii, 2, m., Trebatius.
trecenti, æ, a, three hundred.
tremo, ui, ere, tremble.
trepidus, a, um, trembling.
tres, ia, three.
tribunus, i, 2, m., a tribune.
trigemini, æ, a, three born
at one birth.
tristis, e, sad, gloomy.
triumvir, i, 2, m., a triumvir, one
of three in office.
Troja, æ, 1, f., Troy.
tu, tui, pron., thou.
Tullianum, i, 2, n., the name of a
prison in Rome.
Tullus, i, 2, m., Tullus.
tum, adv., then.
tum, conj., both, as well as.
tumidus, a, um, swollen, proud,
haughty.
tumultus, us, 4, m., a tumult, dis-
turbance.
tunc, adv., then.
turbidus, a, um, turbid, muddy,
troublesome.
turdus, i, 2, m., a thrush.
turma, æ, 1, f., a troop of horse, a
company.
turpis, e, base.
turris, is, 3, f., a tower.
tutus, a, um, safe.
tuus, a, um, pron., thy, thine.
tyranus, i, 2, m., a tyrant.
Tyrius, a, um, Tyrian.
Tyris, i, 2, f., Tyre.

U.

ubi, adv., where, when.
ullus, a, um, any.

ulterior, us, farther.
ultimus, a, um, last, utmost, far-
thest.
ultra, prep., beyond.
ultrix, icis, avenging.
umbra, æ, 1, f., a shade, shadow.
Umbrenus, i, 2, m., Umbrenus.
umbrifer, a, um, casting a shadow.
una, adv., together with.
unctus, a, um, part., anointed.
unda, æ, 1, f., a wave, water.
unde, adv., from whence.
undique, adv., on every side.
undo, avi, atum, 1, I rise in waves,
boil over.
ungo, or unguo, nxi, nctum, 3, I
anoint.
ungula, æ, 1, f., a nail, hoof.
unicus, a, um, one alone, single,
only, excellent.
unquam, adv., ever.
unus, a, um, one.
urbs, bis, 3, f., a city.
urgeo, or urgeo, rsi, rsum, 2, I
urge.
usquam, adv., any where.
usque, adv., always, continually.
usus, us, 4, m., use, practice, ex-
perience.
ut, adv. and conj., that, as,
when.
uter, tra, trum, which, whether of
the two.
uti, adv., that, in order that.
utilis, e, useful.
utinam, adv., or interj., O that!
I wish.
utors, usus sum, uti, dep., I use,
enjoy.
usquam, adv., any where.
utrunque, adv., on both sides.
uvidus, a, um, moist, in cups.
uxor, oris, 3, f., a wife.

V.
vaco, avi, are, 1, I am empty, void,
want.
vacuus, a, um, empty, vain.
vado, si, sum, 3, I go, march,
move.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>valeo</td>
<td>2, I am well, in good health, am strong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valerius</td>
<td>ii, 2, m., Valerius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vallis</td>
<td>is, 3, f., a valley.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vanus</td>
<td>a, um, vain, empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varie</td>
<td>adv., variously, in different ways, at several times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>varius</td>
<td>a, um, various, several.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varus</td>
<td>ii, 2, m., Varus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vas</td>
<td>adis, 3, m., a surely, bail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vasus</td>
<td>3, n., a vessel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vasto</td>
<td>avi, atum, 1, I lay waste, spoil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ve</td>
<td>conj., or, either.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vecto</td>
<td>avi, atum, 1, I carry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vecho</td>
<td>xi, ctum, 3, I bear, carry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vel</td>
<td>conj., or, even.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velum</td>
<td>i, 2, n., a veil, covering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velut</td>
<td>adv., as, even as, as if.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vena</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., a vein, natural humour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venalis</td>
<td>e, to be sold, venal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venia</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., pardon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venio</td>
<td>i, ntum, 4, I come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venter</td>
<td>tris, 3, m., the belly, stomach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventus</td>
<td>i, 2, m., the wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venus</td>
<td>eris, 3, f., Venus, beauty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ver</td>
<td>ris, 3, n., the spring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbero</td>
<td>avi, atum, 1, I beat, whip, scourge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbum</td>
<td>i, 2, n., a word.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>ritus sum, eri, dep., I fear, stand in awe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritas</td>
<td>tatis, 3, f., truth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>a, um, fearing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vero</td>
<td>adv. and conj., truly, but.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versor</td>
<td>atus sum, ari, dep., I am turned, conversant with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versus</td>
<td>a, um, part., turned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versus</td>
<td>us, 4, m., a verse, turning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestibulum</td>
<td>i, 2, n., a porch, entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestras</td>
<td>atis, pron., of your country.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetrul</td>
<td>us, a, um, oldish, stale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetrul</td>
<td>i, 2, m., an old man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>eris, old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>via</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., a way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viator</td>
<td>oris, 3, m. and f., a traveler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vicissitudo</td>
<td>inis, 3, f., vicissitude, a change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victor</td>
<td>oris, 3, m., a conqueror.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victoria</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., victory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>video</td>
<td>idi, isum, 2, I see.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videor</td>
<td>visus sum, videri, dep., I seem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viduus</td>
<td>a, um, deprived of, bereaved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigil</td>
<td>are, 1, I watch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vigilis</td>
<td>e, cheap, vile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinem</td>
<td>or vinculum, i, 2, n., a chain, tie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinosus</td>
<td>a, um, like wine, drunken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinum</td>
<td>i, 2, n., wine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violens</td>
<td>tis, violent, vehement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violentia</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., violence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir</td>
<td>ri, 2, m., a man, husband.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgilius</td>
<td>ii, 2, m., Virgil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgo</td>
<td>inis, 3, f., a virgin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtus</td>
<td>utis, 3, f., virtue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>vim, vi; pl. vires, virium, viribus, 3, f., violence, force, authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viscera</td>
<td>um, 3, n., the bowels, entrails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visio</td>
<td>isi, isum, 3, I go to see, visit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visus</td>
<td>a, um, part., seen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visus</td>
<td>us, 4, m., the sight, vision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vita</td>
<td>æ, 1, f., life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitiosus</td>
<td>a, um, vicious, wicked, depraved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitis</td>
<td>is, 3, f., a vine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vitium</td>
<td>ii, 2, n., vice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivo</td>
<td>ixi, ctum, 3, I live.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivus</td>
<td>a, um, living, alive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vix</td>
<td>adv., scarcely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volito</td>
<td>avi, atum, 1, I fly about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volo</td>
<td>ui, velle, irreg., I wish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volo</td>
<td>avi, atum, 1, I fly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluntas</td>
<td>tatis, 3, f., the will, wish, pleasure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volvo, vi, lutum, 3, <em>I roll, turn over, revolve.</em></td>
<td>vultus, us, 4, m., <em>the countenance.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluntas, tatis, 3, f., <em>delight, sensuality.</em></td>
<td>Z.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>votum, i, 2, n., <em>a wish, vow.</em></td>
<td>Zephyrus, i, 2, m., <em>the west wind.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vox, vocis, 3, f., <em>a voice.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulgus, i, 2, n., <em>the vulgar people.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vulnus, eris, 3, n., <em>a wound.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE END.**
USEFUL TO EXPERIMENTERS AND LECTURERS:

A SYSTEM OF APPARATUS

FOR THE

USE OF LECTURERS AND EXPERIMENTERS

IN

MECHANICAL PHILOSOPHY.

BY THE REV. ROBERT WILLIS, F.R.S.,

Jacksonian Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy in the University of Cambridge.

** For Contents of Work see other side.

WITH THREE PLATES, CONTAINING FIFTY-ONE FIGURES.

Price 5s.
ARTICLE
1. Introductory Remarks.

CHAP. I.—WHEELS AND STUD-SOCKETS.
2. System consists of certain definite parts.
3. Toothed-wheels and other revolving pieces.
4. Key-grooves.
5. Stud-sockets and Collars (figs. 8, 10, 12).
   Note.—Double Socket (fig. 9).
6. Stud-sockets of peculiar form (fig. 18).
7. Stud-sockets of peculiar form (fig. 11).

CHAP. II.—FRAME-WORK PIECES.
8. Frame-work.
10. Brackets (figs. 1 to 6).
   Note.—Clamps (fig. 7).
12. Slit Tables (fig. 16).
13. Sole-blocks (fig. 17).
14. Beds (fig. 20).
15. Rectangles (fig. 19).
17. Stools (figs. 23 to 26).
18. Posts.
19. Loops (fig. 22).
20. Positions of the Studs and Brackets.
22. Tripod-stretcher.

CHAP. III.—SHAFTS AND TUBE-FITTINGS.
23. Mounting of Shafts.
24. Shafts in carriages (figs. 35, 36, 37).
25. Shafts in Tube-fittings (figs. 29, 39).

ARTICLE
27. Shafts between centre-screws.
28. Adapters (fig. 33).
29. Pinned Shaft-rings (fig. 30).
30. Flanch (fig. 32).
31. Lever Arm or Handle (fig. 34).
32. Sets of pieces in definite sizes.
   Note on Bolts.
33. Short Shafts in single bearings.
34. Example—Link-work (fig. 40).
35. Other Mountings of short Shafts (fig. 21).
36. Many independent pieces on a common axis.
37. Example—Ferguson’s Paradox (fig. 41).
38. Remarks.
39. Recapitulations.
   Note on Professor Farish’s method.

CHAP. IV.—APPLICATIONS OF THE SYSTEM.
40. System applied to four purposes (as follows):
41. 1st, Elementary Combinations. Example—
42. Roemer’s Wheels (fig. 42).
43. 2nd, Models of Machines. Examples—
44. Repeating Clock (figs. 43, 44).
45. Parallel Motion Curves (fig. 45).
46. Equatorial Clock (figs. 47 to 50).
47. Friction Machine (fig. 46).
48. Models in which the general principles of the system are applicable.
49. Looms.
50. Rope-making Machinery.
51. Organ.
52. 3rd, Fitting up of Apparatus for Mechanical Philosophy (figs. 31, 27, 28).
53. Use of Paste-board.
54. Shears (fig. 51).
55. 4th, Trial of original contrivances.
A GENERAL TEXT BOOK,
FOR THE
CONSTANT USE AND REFERENCE OF
ARCHITECTS, ENGINEERS, SURVEYORS, SOLICITORS, AUCTIONEERS, LAND AGENTS, AND STEWARDS,
IN ALL THEIR SEVERAL AND VARIED PROFESSIONAL OCCUPATIONS;
AND FOR THE
ASSISTANCE AND GUIDANCE OF
COUNTRY GENTLEMEN AND OTHERS
ENGAGED IN THE
TRANSFER, MANAGEMENT, OR IMPROVEMENT OF LANDED PROPERTY:
CONTAINING
THEOREMS, FORMULÆ, RULES, AND TABLES
IN GEOMETRY, MENSURATION, AND TRIGONOMETRY; LAND MEASURING, SURVEYING, AND LEVELLING; RAILWAY AND HYDRAULIC ENGINEERING; TIMBER MEASURING; THE VALUATION OF ARTIFICERS' WORK, ESTATES, LEASEHOLDS, LIFEHOLDS, ANNUITIES, TILLAGES, FARMING STOCK, AND TENANT RIGHT; THE ASSESSMENT OF PARISHES, RAILWAYS, GAS AND WATER WORKS; THE LAW OF DILAPIDATIONS AND NUISANCES, APPRAISEMENTS AND AUCTIONS, LANDLORD AND TENANT, AGREEMENTS AND LEASES.
TOGETHER WITH EXAMPLES OF VILLAS AND COUNTRY HOUSES.

BY EDWARD RYDE,
Civil Engineer and Land Surveyor, Author of several Professional Works.

TO WHICH ARE ADDED SEVERAL CHAPTERS ON
AGRICULTURE AND LANDED PROPERTY.

BY PROFESSOR DONALDSON,
Author of several Works on Agriculture.
CONTENTS


V.—CONIC SECTIONS.

VI.—LAND MEASURING. Including Table of Decimals of an Acre—Table of Land Measure, by dimensions taken in yards.

VII.—LAND SURVEYING. 1. Parish and Estate Surveying—2. Trigonometrical Surveying—3. Traverse Surveying—4. Field Instruments, the Prismatic Compass; the Box Sextant; the Theodolite.

VIII.—LEVELLING. Levelling Instruments, the Spirit Level; the Y Level; Troughton's Level; Mr. Gravatt's Level; Levelling Staves—Examples in Levelling.

IX.—PLOTTING. Embracing the Circular Protractor—The T Square and Semicircular Protractor—Plotting Sections.


XI.—COPYING MAPS. Including a description of the Pentagraph.

XII.—RAILWAY SURVEYING. 1. Exploration and Trial Levels; Standing Orders.—2. Proceedings subsequent to the Passing of the Act; Tables for Setting out Curves; Tables for Setting out Slopes; Tables of Relative Gradients; Specification of Works to be executed in the construction of a Railway; Form of Tender.

XIII.—COLONIAL SURVEYING.

XIV.—HYDRAULICS IN CONNECTION WITH DRAINAGE, SEWERAGE, AND WATER SUPPLY.—With Synopsis of Ryde's Hydraulic Tables—Specifications, Iron Pipes and Castings; Stone-Ware Drain Pipes; Pipe Laying; Reservoir.

XV.—TIMBER MEASURING. Including Timber Tables, Solid Measure, Unequal Sided Timber; Superficial Measure.


XVII.—VALUATION OF ESTATES. With Tables for the Purchasing of Freehold, Copyhold, or Leasehold Estates, Annuities, and Advowsons, and for Renewing Leases for Terms of Years certain and for Lives.

XVIII.—VALUATION OF TILLAGES AND TENANT RIGHT. With Tables for Measuring and Valuing Hay Ricks.
CONTENTS (continued):—

XIX.—Valuation of Parishes.
XX.—Builders' Prices. 1. Carpenters' and Joiners'—2. Masons'—
XXV.—Stamp Laws.—Stamp Duties—Customs' Duties.

EXAMPLES OF VILLAS AND COUNTRY HOUSES.

ON LANDED PROPERTY, BY PROFESSOR DONALDSON.

I.—Landlord and Tenant—their Position and Connections.
II.—Lease of Land, Conditions, and Restrictions; Choice of Tenant and Assignment of the Deed.
III.—Cultivation of Land, and Rotation of Crops.
V.—Laying-out Farms, Roads, Fences, and Gates.
VI. —Plantations—Young and old Timber.
VII.—Meadows and Embankments, Beds of Rivers, Water Courses, and Flooded Grounds.
VIII.—Land Draining, Open and Covered,—Plan, Execution, and Arrangement between Landlord and Tenant.
IX.—Minerals—Working and Value.
X.—Expenses of an Estate—Regulations of Disbursements—and Relation of the appropriate Expenditures.
XI.—Valuation of Landed Property; of the Soil, of Houses, of Woods, of Minerals, of Manorial Rights, of Royalties, and of Fee Farm Rents.
XII.—Land Steward and Farm Bailiff: Qualifications and Duties.
XIII.—Manor Bailiff, Woodreve, Gardener, and Gamekeeper—their Position and Duties.
XIV.—Fixed days of Audit—Half-Yearly Payments of Rents—Form of Notices, Receipts, and of Cash Books, General Map of Estates, and of each separate Farm—Concluding Observations.
THE

ART OF PHOTOGRAPHY:

INSTRUCTIONS IN THE

ART OF PRODUCING PHOTOGRAPHIC PICTURES IN ANY COLOUR, AND ON ANY MATERIAL,

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS;

AND ALSO OF PERSONS WHO HAVE ALREADY ATTAINED SOME PROFICIENCY IN THE ART; AND OF ENGRAVERS ON COPPER, STONE, WOOD, ETC.

BY DR. G. C. HERMANN HALLEUR,

Late Director of the Royal Technical School at Bochum.

WITH PRACTICAL HINTS

ON THE LOCATE BEST SUITED FOR PHOTOGRAPHIC OPERATIONS, AND ON THE PROPER POSTURE, ATTITUDE, AND DRESS FOR PORTRAITURE.

BY F. SCHUBERT,

Painter.

And an Appendix

CONTAINING BRIEF EXPLANATIONS OF SOME OF THE CHEMICAL TERMS WHICH OCCASIONALLY OCCUR IN THE WORK.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN

BY G. L. STRAUSS, PH. DR.

With Woodcuts. Price 1s.
In Folio, with 100 Engravings, price 100 Francs French, or Four Pounds sterling.

ANCIENT SMITHERY

OF

GOLD, SILVER, COPPER, AND IRON,

MEASURED AND DRAWN

From Ancient Models,

AND COMPRISED IN

ONE HUNDRED FULL-PAGED EXAMPLES,

WITH

AMPLE DETAILS OF THE MIDDLE AGE.

EXAMPLES FOR INTERIOR DECORATIONS FOR DOMESTIC AND ECCLESIASTICAL PURPOSES.

JUST ISSUED AT BRUGES,

AND NOW SOLD BY

JOHN WEALE,

59, HIGH HOLBORN.
The following very superior Works, which are elaborately illustrated by Engravings, show, by educational means, the correct mode of Instruction in Design for elementary purposes, and for practice in drawing accurately, with elegance of style, in the Fine and Useful Arts.

To the Trustees of Government Schools of Design, Mechanic Institutes, Institutions of Civil and Mechanical Engineers, and to Professional Men, the following list is especially addressed.

I.

*COURS ÉLÉMENTAIRES DE LAVIS APPLIQUÉ* À L'ARCHITECTURE. Folio volume, containing 40 elaborately engraved plates, in Shadows and Colours, very finely executed by the best artists of France. Price 2L. Paris, 50/.

II.

*COURS ÉLÉMENTAIRES DE LAVIS APPLIQUÉ* À MÉCANIQUE. Folio volume, containing 40 elaborately engraved plates, in Shadows and Colours, very finely executed by the best artists of France. Price 2L. Paris, 50/.

III.


IV.

*ÉTUDES PROGRESSIVES ET COMPLÉTÉES D'ARCHITECTURE ET DE LAVIS.* Par J. B. TRIPON. Largo folio, 24 fine plates, comprising the orders of Architecture, Mouldings with Profiles, Ornaments, and Forms of their Proportion, Art of Shadowing Doors, Balusters, Parterres, &c. &c. &c. Price 1L. 4s. Paris, 50/.

V.
